User's Manual

RI78V4

Real-Time Operating System

User's Manual: Coding

Target Device
RL78 Family
78K0R Microcontroller

All information contained in these matenals, including products and product specifications, represents information on the product at the time of publication and is subject to change by Renesas Electronics Corp. without notice. Please review the latest information published by Renesas Electronics Corp. through various means, including the Renesas Electronics Corp. website (http://www.renesas.com).

Renesas Electronics
www.renesas.com

Rev.1.01 Apr 2012

Notice

1. All information included in this document is current as of the date this document is issued. Such information, however, is subject to change without any prior notice. Before purchasing or using any Renesas Electronics products listed herein, please confirm the latest product information with a Renesas Electronics sales office. Also, please pay regular and careful attention to additional and different information to be disclosed by Renesas Electronics such as that disclosed through our website.
2. Renesas Electronics does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from the use of Renesas Electronics products or technical information described in this document. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted hereby under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of Renesas Electronics or others.
3. You should not alter, modify, copy, or otherwise misappropriate any Renesas Electronics product, whether in whole or in part.
4. Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided only to illustrate the operation of semiconductor products and application examples. You are fully responsible for the incorporation of these circuits, software, and information in the design of your equipment. Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software, or information.
5. When exporting the products or technology described in this document, you should comply with the applicable export control laws and regulations and follow the procedures required by such laws and regulations. You should not use Renesas Electronics products or the technology described in this document for any purpose relating to military applications or use by the military, including but not limited to the development of weapons of mass destruction. Renesas Electronics products and technology may not be used for or incorporated into any products or systems whose manufacture, use, or sale is prohibited under any applicable domestic or foreign laws or regulations.
6. Renesas Electronics has used reasonable care in preparing the information included in this document, but Renesas Electronics does not warrant that such information is error free. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability whatsoever for any damages incurred by you resulting from errors in or omissions from the information included herein.
7. Renesas Electronics products are classified according to the following three quality grades: "Standard", "High Quality", and "Specific". The recommended applications for each Renesas Electronics product depends on the product's quality grade, as indicated below. You must check the quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product before using it in a particular application. You may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application categorized as "Specific" without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Further, you may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application for which it is not intended without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Renesas Electronics shall not be in any way liable for any damages or losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of any Renesas Electronics product for an application categorized as "Specific" or for which the product is not intended where you have failed to obtain the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. The quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product is "Standard" unless otherwise expressly specified in a Renesas Electronics data sheets or data books, etc.

   "Standard": Computers; office equipment; communications equipment; test and measurement equipment; audio and visual equipment; home electronic appliances; machine tools; personal electronic equipment; and industrial robots.

   "High Quality": Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.); traffic control systems; anti-disaster systems; anti-crime systems; safety equipment; and medical equipment not specifically designed for life support.

   "Specific": Aircraft; aerospace equipment; submersible repeaters; nuclear reactor control systems; medical equipment or systems for life support (e.g. artificial life support devices or systems), surgical implantations, or healthcare intervention (e.g. excision, etc.), and any other applications or purposes that pose a direct threat to human life.
8. You should use the Renesas Electronics products described in this document within the range specified by Renesas Electronics, especially with respect to the maximum rating, operating supply voltage range, movement power voltage range, heat radiation characteristics, installation and other product characteristics. Renesas Electronics shall have no liability for malfunctions or damages arising out of the use of Renesas Electronics products beyond such specified ranges.
9. Although Renesas Electronics endeavors to improve the quality and reliability of its products, semiconductor products have specific characteristics such as the occurrence of failure at a certain rate and malfunctions under certain use conditions. Further, Renesas Electronics products are not subject to radiation resistance design. Please be sure to implement safety measures to guard them against the possibility of physical injury, and injury or damage caused by fire in the event of the failure of a Renesas Electronics product, such as safety design for hardware and software including but not limited to redundancy, fire control and malfunction prevention, appropriate treatment for aging degradation or any other appropriate measures. Because the evaluation of microcomputer software alone is very difficult, please evaluate the safety of the final products or system manufactured by you.
10. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office for details as to environmental matters such as the environmental compatibility of each Renesas Electronics product. Please use Renesas Electronics products in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations that regulate the inclusion or use of controlled substances, including without limitation, the EU RoHS Directive. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability for damages or losses occurring as a result of your noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations.
11. This document may not be reproduced or duplicated, in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written consent of Renesas Electronics.
12. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office if you have any questions regarding the information contained in this document or Renesas Electronics products, or if you have any other inquiries.

(Note 1) "Renesas Electronics" as used in this document means Renesas Electronics Corporation and also includes its majority-owned subsidiaries.

(Note 2) "Renesas Electronics product(s)" means any product developed or manufactured by or for Renesas Electronics.

How to Use This Manual

Readers

This manual is intended for users who design and develop application systems using RL78 family and 78K0R microcontrollers products.

Purpose

This manual is intended for users to understand the functions of real-time OS "RI78V4" manufactured by Renesas Electronics, described the organization listed below.

Organization

This manual consists of the following major sections.

CHAPTER 1 OVERVIEW
CHAPTER 2 SYSTEM CONSTRUCTION
CHAPTER 3 TASK MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS
CHAPTER 4 TASK DEPENDENT SYNCHRONIZATION FUNCTIONS
CHAPTER 5 SYNCHRONIZATION AND COMMUNICATION FUNCTIONS
CHAPTER 6 MEMORY POOL MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS
CHAPTER 7 TIME MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS
CHAPTER 8 SYSTEM STATE MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS
CHAPTER 9 INTERRUPT MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS
CHAPTER 10 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS
CHAPTER 11 SCHEDULER
CHAPTER 12 SERVICE CALLS
CHAPTER 13 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE
CHAPTER 14 CONFIGURATOR CF78V4
APPENDIX A WINDOW REFERENCE
APPENDIX B CAUTIONS
APPENDIX C INDEX

How to Read This Manual

It is assumed that the readers of this manual have general knowledge in the fields of electrical engineering, logic circuits, microcontrollers, C language, and assemblers.

To understand the hardware functions of the RL78 family and 78K0R microcontroller.
-> Refer to the **User's Manual** of each product.

Conventions

Data significance:	Higher digits on the left and lower digits on the right
Note:	Footnote for item marked with **Note** in the text
Caution:	Information requiring particular attention
Remark:	Supplementary information
Numeric representation:	Decimal ... XXXX
	Hexadecimal ... 0xXXXX

Prefixes indicating power of 2 (address space and memory capacity):

K (kilo)	$2^{10} = 1024$
M (mega)	$2^{20} = 1024^2$

Related Documents

The related documents indicated in this publication may include preliminary versions. However, preliminary versions are not marked as such.

Document Name		Document No.
RI Series	Start	R20UT0751E
	Message	R20UT0756E
RI78V4	Coding	This manual
	Debug	R20UT0753E
	Analysis	R20UT0513E

Caution The related documents listed above are subject to change without notice. Be sure to use the latest edition of each document when designing.

All trademarks or registered trademarks in this document are the property of their respective owners.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 OVERVIEW ... 10

1.1 Outline ... 10
1.1.1 Real-time OS ... 10
1.1.2 Multi-task OS ... 10

CHAPTER 2 SYSTEM CONSTRUCTION ... 11

2.1 Outline ... 11
2.2 Coding of Processing Program ... 12
2.3 Coding of System Configuration File ... 12
2.4 Coding of User-Own Coding Module ... 13
2.5 Coding of Directive File ... 14
2.5.1 k_system segment ... 15
2.5.2 k_info segment ... 15
2.5.3 k_const segment ... 15
2.5.4 k_data segment ... 15
2.5.5 k_stack segment ... 15
2.5.6 k_work0, k_work1, k_work2, k_work3 segment ... 16
2.6 Creating Load Module ... 17
2.7 Embedding System ... 21

CHAPTER 3 TASK MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS ... 22

3.1 Outline ... 22
3.2 Tasks ... 22
3.2.1 Task state ... 22
3.2.2 Task priority ... 24
3.2.3 Create task ... 24
3.2.4 Delete task ... 24
3.2.5 Basic form of tasks ... 25
3.2.6 Internal processing of task ... 26
3.3 Activate Task ... 27
3.3.1 Queuing an activation request ... 27
3.3.2 Not queuing an activation request ... 28
3.4 Cancel Task Activation Requests ... 29
3.5 Terminate Task ... 30
3.5.1 Terminate invoking task ... 30
3.5.2 Terminate task ... 31
3.6 Change Task Priority ... 32
3.7 Reference Task State ... 33

CHAPTER 4 TASK DEPENDENT SYNCHRONIZATION FUNCTIONS ... 34

4.1 Outline ... 34

4.2 Put Task to Sleep ... 34
4.3 Wakeup Task ... 37
4.4 Cancel Task Wakeup Requests ... 38
4.5 Release Task from Waiting ... 39
4.6 Suspend Task ... 40
4.7 Resume Suspended Task ... 41
4.8 Delay Task ... 43

CHAPTER 5 SYNCHRONIZATION AND COMMUNICATION FUNCTIONS ... 44

5.1 Outline ... 44
5.2 Semaphores ... 44
5.2.1 Create semaphore ... 44
5.2.2 Delete semaphore ... 44
5.2.3 Release semaphore resource ... 45
5.2.4 Acquire semaphore resource ... 46
5.2.5 Reference semaphore state ... 49
5.3 Eventflags ... 50
5.3.1 Create eventflag ... 50
5.3.2 Delete eventflag ... 50
5.3.3 Set eventflag ... 51
5.3.4 Clear eventflag ... 52
5.3.5 Wait for eventflag ... 53
5.3.6 Reference eventflag state ... 58
5.4 Mailboxes ... 59
5.4.1 Create mailbox ... 59
5.4.2 Delete mailbox ... 59
5.4.3 Message ... 60
5.4.4 Send to mailbox ... 61
5.4.5 Receive from mailbox ... 62
5.4.6 Reference mailbox state ... 65

CHAPTER 6 MEMORY POOL MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS ... 66

6.1 Outline ... 66
6.2 Fixed-Sized Memory Pool ... 66
6.2.1 Create fixed-sized memory pool ... 66
6.2.2 Delete fixed-sized memory pool ... 67
6.2.3 Acquire fixed-sized memory block ... 67
6.2.4 Release fixed-sized memory block ... 71
6.2.5 Reference fixed-sized memory pool state ... 72

CHAPTER 7 TIME MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS ... 73

7.1 Outline ... 73
7.2 Timer Handler ... 73
7.2.1 Define timer handler ... 73
7.3 Delayed Wakeup ... 74
7.4 Timeout ... 74
7.5 Cyclic Handlers ... 75
7.5.1 Create cyclic handler ... 75

7.5.2 Delete cyclic handler ... 75
7.5.3 Basic form of cyclic handlers ... 75
7.5.4 Internal processing of cyclic handler ... 76
7.5.5 Start cyclic handler operation ... 77
7.5.6 Stop cyclic handler operation ... 78
7.5.7 Reference cyclic handler state ... 79

CHAPTER 8 SYSTEM STATE MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS ... 80

8.1 Outline ... 80
8.2 Rotate Task Precedence ... 80
8.3 Reference Task ID in the RUNNING State ... 82
8.4 Lock the CPU ... 83
8.5 Unlock the CPU ... 85
8.6 Disable Dispatching ... 86
8.7 Enable Dispatching ... 88
8.8 Reference Contexts ... 89
8.9 Reference CPU State ... 90
8.10 Reference Dispatching State ... 91
8.11 Reference Dispatch Pending State ... 92

CHAPTER 9 INTERRUPT MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS ... 93

9.1 Outline ... 93
9.2 Interrupt Entry Processing ... 93
9.2.1 Basic form of interrupt entry processing ... 94
9.2.2 Internal processing of interrupt entry processing ... 94
9.3 Interrupt Handlers ... 95
9.3.1 Define interrupt handler ... 95
9.3.2 Basic form of interrupt handlers ... 96
9.3.3 Internal processing of interrupt handler ... 98
9.4 Controlling Enabling/Disabling of Interrupts ... 99
9.4.1 Interrupt level under management of the RI78V4 ... 99
9.4.2 Controlling enabling/disabling of interrupts in the RI78V4 ... 99
9.4.3 Controlling enabling/disabling of interrupts in user processes ... 100
9.5 Multiple Interrupts ... 101

CHAPTER 10 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS ... 103

10.1 Outline ... 103
10.2 Boot Processing ... 104
10.2.1 Define boot processing ... 104
10.2.2 Basic form of boot processing ... 104
10.2.3 Internal processing of boot processing ... 105
10.3 Initialization Routine ... 106
10.3.1 Define initialization routine ... 106
10.3.2 Undefine initialization routine ... 106
10.3.3 Basic form of initialization routine ... 106
10.3.4 Internal processing of initialization routine ... 107

10.4 Kernel Initialization Module ... 107
10.5 Reference Version Information ... 108

CHAPTER 11 SCHEDULER ... 109

11.1 Outline ... 109
11.2 Driving Method ... 109
11.3 Scheduling System ... 109
11.4 Ready Queue ... 110
11.4.1 Create ready queue ... 110
11.4.2 Delete ready queue ... 110
11.4.3 Rotate task precedence ... 111
11.4.4 Change task priority ... 113
11.5 Scheduling Disabling ... 115
11.5.1 Disable dispatching ... 116
11.5.2 Enable dispatching ... 117
11.6 Delay of Scheduling ... 118
11.7 Idle Routine ... 119
11.7.1 Define idle routine ... 119
11.7.2 Undefine idle routine ... 119
11.7.3 Basic form of idle routine ... 119
11.7.4 Internal processing of idle routine ... 120

CHAPTER 12 SERVICE CALLS ... 121

12.1 Outline ... 121
12.2 Call Service Call ... 122
12.2.1 C language ... 122
12.2.2 Assembly language ... 123
12.3 Amount of Stack Used by Service Calls ... 124
12.4 Data Macros ... 126
12.4.1 Data types ... 126
12.4.2 Current state ... 127
12.4.3 WAITING types ... 127
12.4.4 Return value ... 128
12.4.5 Conditional compile macro ... 128
12.4.6 Others ... 128
12.5 Packet Formats ... 129
12.5.1 Task state packet ... 129
12.5.2 Semaphore state packet ... 131
12.5.3 Eventflag state packet ... 132
12.5.4 Message packet ... 133
12.5.5 Mailbox state packet ... 134
12.5.6 Fixed-sized memory pool state packet ... 135
12.5.7 Cyclic handler state packet ... 136
12.5.8 Version information packet ... 137
12.6 Task Management Functions ... 138
12.7 Task Dependent Synchronization Functions ... 149
12.8 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Semaphores) ... 163

12.9 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Eventflags) ... 171
12.10 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Mailboxes) ... 182
12.11 Memory Pool Management Functions ... 191
12.12 Time Management Functions ... 200
12.13 System State Management Functions ... 205
12.14 System Configuration Management Functions ... 218

CHAPTER 13 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE ... 220

13.1 Notation Method ... 220
13.2 Configuration Information ... 221
13.2.1 Cautions ... 221
13.3 System Information ... 222
13.3.1 System stack information ... 222
13.3.2 Task priority information ... 223
13.4 Static API Information ... 224
13.4.1 Task information ... 224
13.4.2 Semaphore information ... 227
13.4.3 Eventflag information ... 228
13.4.4 Mailbox information ... 229
13.4.5 Fixed-sized memory pool information ... 230
13.4.6 Cyclic handler information ... 232
13.5 Stack Size Estimation ... 234
13.5.1 System stack size ... 234
13.5.2 Stack size of the task ... 235
13.6 Description Examples ... 237

CHAPTER 14 CONFIGURATOR CF78V4 ... 238

14.1 Outline ... 238
14.2 Activation Method ... 239
14.2.1 Activating from command line ... 239
14.2.2 Activating from CubeSuite+ ... 240
14.2.3 Command file ... 241
14.2.4 Command input examples ... 242

APPENDIX A WINDOW REFERENCE ... 243

A.1 Description ... 243

APPENDIX B CAUTIONS ... 260

B.1 Restriction of Compiler Option ... 260
B.2 Handling Register Bank ... 260
B.3 Pointer Declarations ... 261

APPENDIX C INDEX ... 262

CHAPTER 1 OVERVIEW

1.1 Outline

The RI78V4 is a built-in real-time, multi-task OS that provides a highly efficient real-time, multi-task environment to increases the application range of processor control units.

The RI78V4 is a high-speed, compact OS capable of being stored in and run from the ROM of a target system.

1.1.1 Real-time OS

Control equipment demands systems that can rapidly respond to events occurring both internal and external to the equipment. Conventional systems have utilized simple interrupt handling as a means of satisfying this demand. As control equipment has become more powerful, however, it has proved difficult for systems to satisfy these requirements by means of simple interrupt handling alone.

In other words, the task of managing the order in which internal and external events are processed has become increasingly difficult as systems have increased in complexity and programs have become larger.

Real-time OS has been designed to overcome this problem.

The main purpose of a real-time OS is to respond to internal and external events rapidly and execute programs in the optimum order.

1.1.2 Multi-task OS

A "task" is the minimum unit in which a program can be executed by an OS. "Multi-task" is the name given to the mode of operation in which a single processor processes multiple tasks concurrently.

Actually, the processor can handle no more than one program (instruction) at a time. But, by switching the processor's attention to individual tasks on a regular basis (at a certain timing) it appears that the tasks are being processed simultaneously.

A multi-task OS enables the parallel processing of tasks by switching the tasks to be executed as determined by the system.

One important purpose of a multi-task OS is to improve the throughput of the overall system through the parallel processing of multiple tasks.

CHAPTER 2 SYSTEM CONSTRUCTION

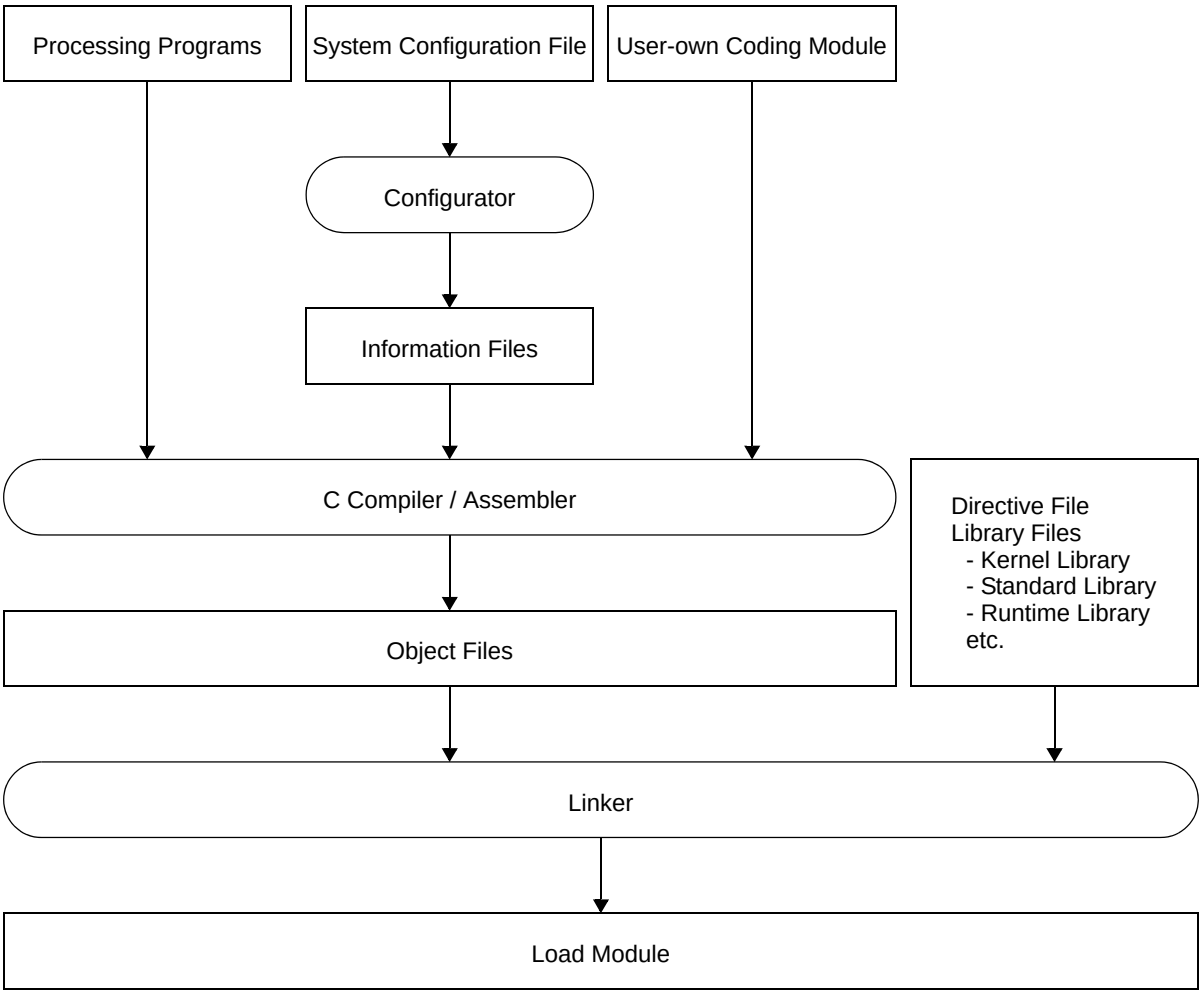
This chapter describes how to build a system (load module) that uses the functions provided by the RI78V4.

2.1 Outline

System building consists in the creation of a load module using the files (kernel library, etc.) installed on the user development environment (host machine) from the RI78V4's supply media.

The following shows the procedure for organizing the system.

Figure 2-1 Example of System Construction



2.2 Coding of Processing Program

Code the processing that should be implemented in the system.

In the RI78V4, the processing program is classified into the following three types, in accordance with the types and purposes of the processing that should be implemented.

- Tasks

  A task is processing program that is not executed unless it is explicitly manipulated via service calls provided by the RI78V4, unlike other processing programs (cyclic handler and interrupt handler).

  Note For details about the task, refer to "3.2 Tasks".

- Cyclic Handlers

  The cyclic handler is a routine dedicated to cycle processing that is activated periodically at a constant interval (activation cycle).

  The RI78V4 handles the cyclic handler as a "non-task (module independent from tasks)". Therefore, even if a task with the highest priority in the system is being executed, the processing is suspended when a specified activation cycle has come, and the control is passed to the cyclic handler.

  Note For details about the cyclic handler, refer to "7.5 Cyclic Handlers".

- Interrupt Handlers

  The interrupt handler is a routine dedicated to interrupt servicing that is activated when an interrupt occurs.

  The RI78V4 handles the interrupt handler as a "non-task (module independent from tasks)". Therefore, even if a task with the highest priority in the system is being executed, the processing is suspended when an interrupt occurs, and the control is passed to the interrupt handler.

  Note 1 For details about the interrupt handler, refer to "9.3 Interrupt Handlers".

  Note 2 The user must code the interrupt handlers that calls the Timer Handler.

2.3 Coding of System Configuration File

Code the SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE required for creating information files (system information table file, system information header file) that contain data to be provided for the RI78V4.

Note For details about the system configuration file, refer to "CHAPTER 13 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE".

2.4 Coding of User-Own Coding Module

Code the user-own coding modules that are extracted to allow the RI78V4 to be supported in various execution environments.

In the RI78V4, the user-own coding module is classified into the following four types, in accordance with the types and purposes of the processing that should be implemented.

- Interrupt Entry Processing
  A routine dedicated to entry processing that is extracted from the INTERRUPT MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS as a user-own coding module to assign instructions to branch to relevant processing (such as Interrupt Handlers or Boot Processing), to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes the control when an interrupt occurs.

  Note 1 For details about the interrupt entry processing, refer to "9.2 Interrupt Entry Processing".

  Note 2 For interrupt handlers written using the #pragma rtos_interrupt directive, the user is not required to write the relevant interrupt entry processing because the C compiler automatically outputs the interrupt entry processing corresponding to the interrupt request name.

- Boot Processing
  A routine dedicated to initialization processing that is extracted from the SYSTEM CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS as a user-own coding module to initialize the minimum required hardware for the RI78V4 to perform processing. It is called from Interrupt Entry Processing that is assigned to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes the control when a reset interrupt occurs.

  Note For details about the boot processing, refer to "10.2 Boot Processing".

- Initialization Routine
  A routine dedicated to initialization processing that is extracted from the SYSTEM CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS as a user-own coding module to initialize the hardware dependent on the user execution environment (such as the peripheral controller), and is called from the Kernel Initialization Module.

  Note For details about the initialization routine, refer to "10.3 Initialization Routine".

- Idle Routine
  A routine dedicated to idle processing that is extracted from the SCHEDULER as a user-own coding module to utilize the standby function provided by the CPU (to achieve the low-power consumption system), and is called from the scheduler when there no longer remains a task subject to scheduling by the RI78V4 (task in the RUNNING or READY state) in the system.

  Note For details about the idle routine, refer to "11.7 Idle Routine".

2.5 Coding of Directive File

Code the directive file used by the user to fix the address allocation done by the linker. In the RI78V4, the allocation destinations (segment names) of management objects modularized for each function are specified.

The following lists the segment names prescribed in the RI78V4.

Table 2-1 RI78V4 Segments

Segment Name	ROM/RAM	Segment Attribute	Description
k_system	ROM	CSEG UNITP	Area where the RI78V4's core processing part and main processing part of service calls provided by the RI78V4 are to be allocated. The start can be aligned at an even address in the area from 0x000c0 to 0xeffff.
k_info	ROM	CSEG UNITP	Area where information items such as the RI78V4 version are to be allocated. The start can be aligned at an even address in the area from 0x000c0 to 0xeffff.
k_const	ROM	CSEG PAGE64KP	Area where initial information items related to OS resources that do not change dynamically are allocated as system information tables. The start can be aligned at an even address that does not span a 64K boundary.
k_data	RAM	DSEG PAGE64KP	Area where information items required to implement the functionalities provided by the RI78V4 and information items related to OS resources that change dynamically are allocated as management objects. The start can be aligned at an even address that does not span a 64K boundary.
k_stack	RAM	DSEG BASEP	Area where the system stack and the task stack are to be allocated. The start can be aligned at an even address in the built-in RAM area from 0xf*xxxx* to 0xffeff.
k_work0 k_work1 k_work2 k_work3	RAM	DSEG PAGE64KP	Area where fixed-sized memory pools are to be allocated. The start can be aligned at an even address that does not span a 64K boundary.

Note 1 The k_stack segment can be allocated only to the near area (0xf0000 to 0xffe1f).

Note 2 Specification of k_work0, k_work1, k_work2 and k_work3 is required only when the relevant segment names are specified in Fixed-sized memory pool information.

Note 3 The RI78V4 occupies the 8-byte area from the saddr area (0xffe20 to 0xfff1f). Therefore, the available saddr area for the user is up to 247 bytes.

Note 4 For details about the directive file, refer to "CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual: RL78,78K0R Coding".

2.5.1 k_system segment

The size of the k_system segment is approximately 1 KB to 8 KB depends on the service calls used in the processing program.

2.5.2 k_info segment

The size of the k_info segment is approximately 1 KB.

2.5.3 k_const segment

The following shows an expression required for estimating the k_const segment size (unit: bytes).

const = (*tsknum* * 10) + *semnum* + *flgnum* + (*mpfnum* * 8) + (*cycnum* * 8) + (*kindnum* * 4) + 15

tsknum: Total amount of Task information
semnum: Total amount of Semaphore information
flgnum: Total amount of Eventflag information
mpfnum: Total amount of Fixed-sized memory pool information
kindnum: Total number of types defined in the system configuration file among five types of information related to OS resources (Semaphore information, Eventflag information, Mailbox information, Fixed-sized memory pool information and Cyclic handler information)

2.5.4 k_data segment

The following shows an expression required for estimating the k_data segment size (unit: bytes).
The expression varies depending on whether or not Semaphore information is defined in the system configuration file.

[When semaphore information is defined]
data = align2 (*maxtpri* + 1) + align2 { (*tsknum* * 24) + (*semnum* * 2) + 1 } + align2 (*flgnum* * 3) + (*mbxnum* * 8) + align2 (*primbx*) + (*mpfnum* * 4) + (*cycnum* * 8) + 40

[When semaphore information is not defined]
data = align2 (*maxtpri* + 1) + (*tsknum* * 24) + align2 (*flgnum* * 3) + (*mbxnum* * 8) + align2 (*primbx*) + (*mpfnum* * 4) + (*cycnum* * 8) + 40

maxtpri: Priority range specified in Task priority information
tsknum: Total amount of Task information
semnum: Total amount of Semaphore information
flgnum: Total amount of Eventflag information
mbxnum: Total amount of Mailbox information
primbx: Total amount of Mailbox information for which the priority is specified for the attribute (message queuing method)
mpfnum: Total amount of Fixed-sized memory pool information
cycnum: Total amount of Cyclic handler information

2.5.5 k_stack segment

The following shows an expression required for estimating the k_stack segment size (unit: bytes).

$$stack = \sum_{k=1}^{tsknum} (stksz_k + 28) + (sys\_stksz + 2)$$

tsknum: Total amount of Task information
stksz $_k$: Stack size specified in Task information
sys_stksz: Stack size specified in System stack information

2.5.6 k_work0, k_work1, k_work2, k_work3 segment

The following shows an expression required for estimating the size of the k_work0, k_work1, k_work2, and k_work3 segments (unit: bytes).

$$\text{work}X = \sum_{k=1}^{mpfnum} (blkcnt_k * blksz_k)$$

mpfnum: Total number of segment units for Fixed-sized memory pool information
$blkcnt_k$: Number of fixed-sized memory blocks specified in Fixed-sized memory pool information
$blksz_k$: Block size specified in Fixed-sized memory pool information

2.6 Creating Load Module

Run a build on the CubeSuite+ for files created in sections from "2.2 Coding of Processing Program" to "2.5 Coding of Directive File", and library files provided by the RI78V4 and C compiler package, to create a load module.
The following lists the files required for creating load modules.

1) Create or load a project

Create a new project, or load an existing one.

Note See “RI Series Real-Time Operating System User's Manual: Start” or “CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual: Start” for details about creating a new project or loading an existing one.

2) Set a build target project

When making settings for or running a build, set the active project.
If there is no subproject, the project is always active.

Note See “CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual: Build” for details about setting the active project.

3) Set build target files

For the project, add or remove build target files and update the dependencies.

Note See “CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual: Build” for details about adding or removing build target files for the project and updating the dependencies.

The following lists the files required for creating a load module.

- C/assembly language source files created in "2.2 Coding of Processing Program"
  - Tasks, Cyclic Handlers, Interrupt Handlers
- System configuration file created in “2.3 Coding of System Configuration File”
  - SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE

Note Specify “cfg“ as the extention of the system configuration file name.
If the extension is different, "cfg" is automatically added (for example, if you designate "aaa.c" as a file name, the file is named as "aaa.c.cfg").

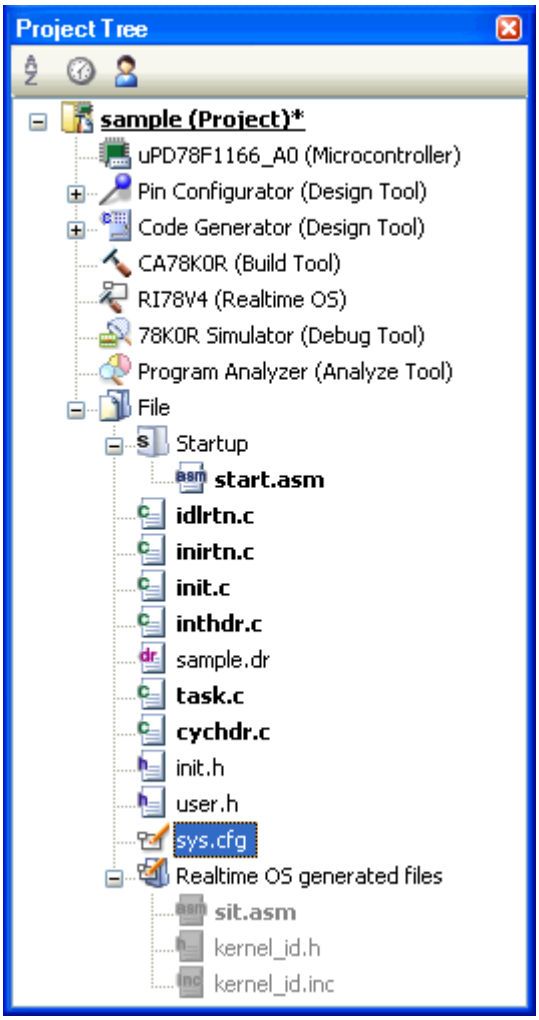
- C/assembly language source files created in "2.4 Coding of User-Own Coding Module"
  - Interrupt Entry Processing, Boot Processing, Initialization Routine, Idle Routine
- Directive file created in "2.5 Coding of Directive File"
  - Directive file
- Library files provided by the RI78V4
  - Kernel library
- Library files provided by the C compiler/assembler package
  - Standard library, runtime library, etc.

Note 1 If the system configuration file is added to the Project Tree panel, the Realtime OS generated files node is appeared.
The following information files are appeared under the Realtime OS generated files node. However, these files are not generated at this point in time.

- System information table file

- System information header file (for C language)
- System information header file (for assembly language)

Figure 2-2 Project Tree Panel (After Adding sys.cfg)



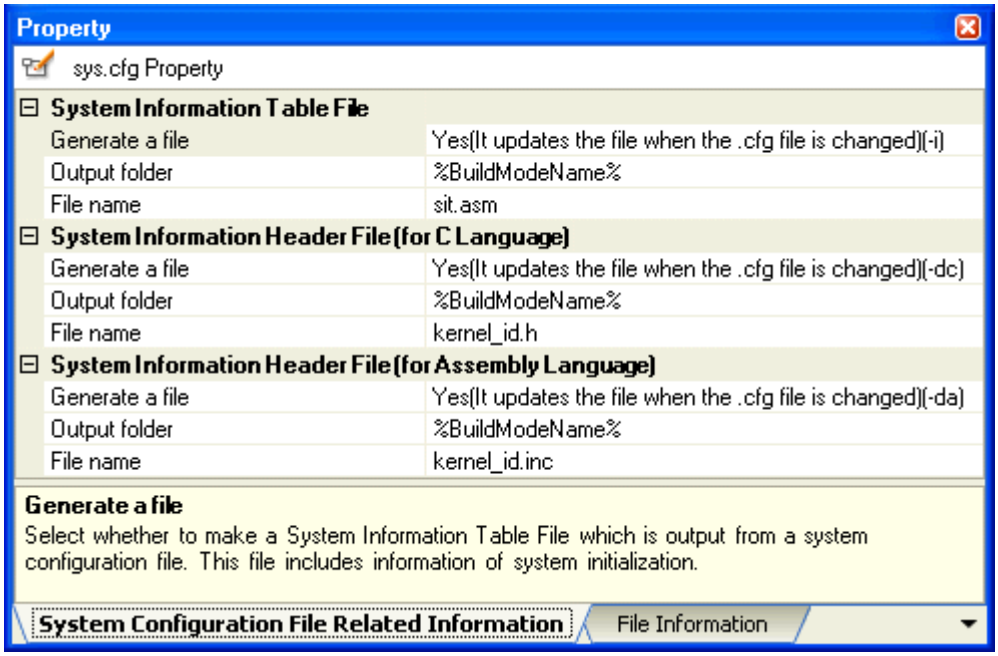
Note 2 When replacing the system configuration file, first remove the added system configuration file from the project, then add another one again.

Note 3 Although it is possible to add more than one system configuration files to a project, only the first file added is enabled. Note that if you remove the enabled file from the project, the remaining additional files will not be enabled; you must therefore add them again.

4) Set the output of information files

Select the system configuration file on the project tree to open the Property panel.
On the [System Configuration File Related Information] tab, set the output of information files (system information table file and system information header files).

Figure 2-3 Property Panel: [System Configuration File Related Information] Tab


Property
sys.cfg Property
System Information Table File
Generate a file
Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-i)
Output folder
%BuildModeName%
File name
sit.asm
System Information Header File(for C Language)
Generate a file
Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-dc)
Output folder
%BuildModeName%
File name
kernel_id.h
System Information Header File(for Assembly Language)
Generate a file
Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-da)
Output folder
%BuildModeName%
File name
kernel_id.inc
Generate a file
Select whether to make a System Information Table File which is output from a system configuration file. This file includes information of system initialization.
System Configuration File Related Information
File Information

5) Specify the output of a load module file

Set the output of a load module file as the product of the build.

Note See “CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual: RL78,78K0R Build” for details about specifying the output of a load module file.

6) Set build options

Set the options for the compiler, assembler, linker, and the like.

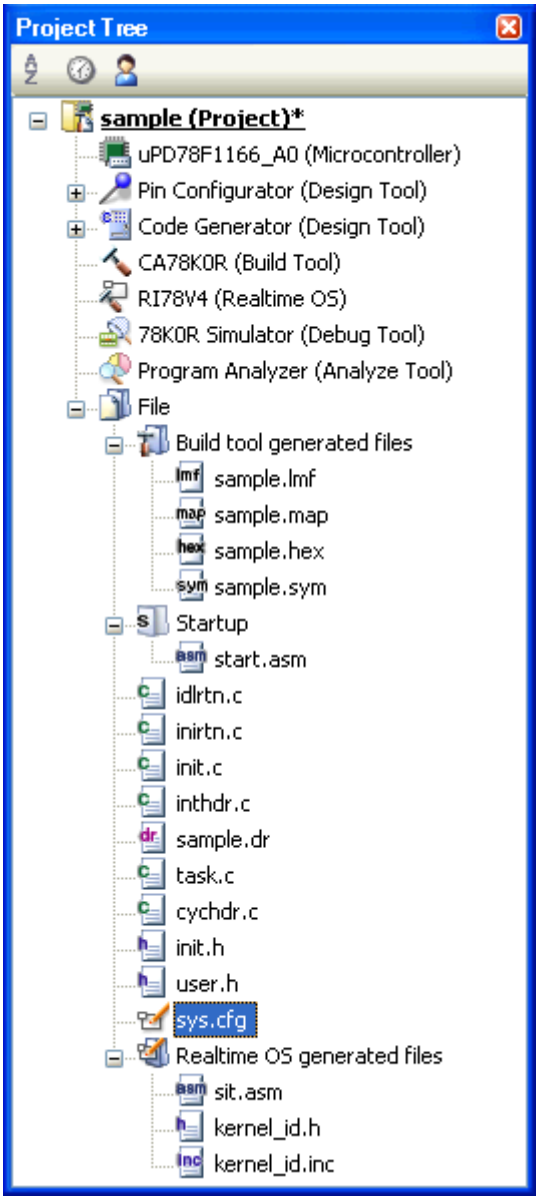
Note See “CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User’s Manual: RL78,78K0R Build” for details about setting build options.

7) Run a build

Run a build to create a load module.

Note See “CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual: RL78,78K0R Build” for details about runnig a build.

Figure 2-4 Project Tree Panel (After Running Build)



8) Save the project

Save the setting information of the project to the project file.

Note See “CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual: Start” for details about saving the project.

2.7 Embedding System

If the output of hex files are set in 4) of "2.6 Creating Load Module", hex files are created.
After that, embed the modules to the system by using a flash programmer.

CHAPTER 3 TASK MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the task management functions performed by the RI78V4.

3.1 Outline

The task control functions provided by the RI78V4 include a function to reference task statuses, in addition to a function to manipulate task statuses.

3.2 Tasks

A task is processing program that is not executed unless it is explicitly manipulated via service calls provided by the RI78V4, unlike other processing programs (cyclic handler and interrupt handler), and is called from the scheduler.

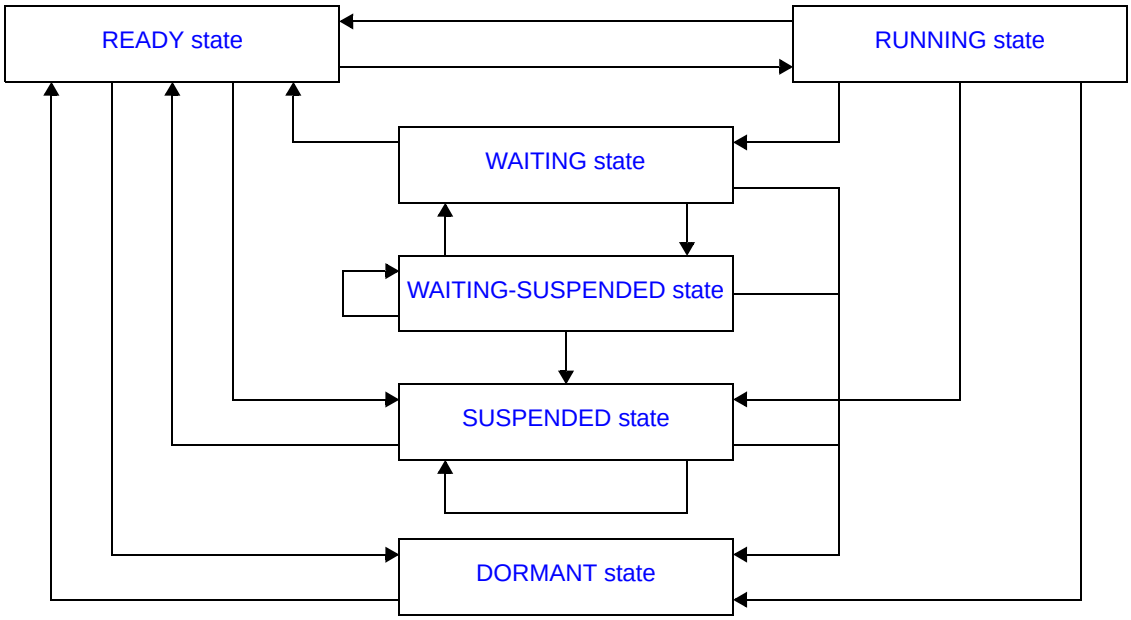
Note The execution environment information required for a task's execution is called "task context". During task execution switching, the task context of the task currently under execution by the RI78V4 is saved and the task context of the next task to be executed is loaded.

3.2.1 Task state

Tasks enter various states according to the acquisition status for the OS resources required for task execution and the occurrence/non-occurrence of various events. In this process, the current state of each task must be checked and managed by the RI78V4.

The RI78V4 classifies task states into the following six types.

Figure 3-1 Task State



- DORMANT state

  State of a task that is not active, or the state entered by a task whose processing has ended.
  A task in the DORMANT state, while being under management of the RI78V4, is not subject to the RI78V4 scheduling.

- READY state

  State of a task for which the preparations required for processing execution have been completed, but since another task with a higher priority level or a task with the same priority level is currently being processed, the task is waiting to be given the CPU's use right.

- RUNNING state

  State of a task that has acquired the CPU use right and is currently being processed.
  Only one task can be in the running state at one time in the entire system.

- WAITING state

  State in which processing execution has been suspended because conditions required for execution are not satisfied. Resumption of processing from the WAITING state starts from the point where the processing execution was suspended. The value of information required for resumption (such as task context) immediately before suspension is therefore restored.
  In the RI78V4, the WAITING state is classified into the following six types according to their required conditions and managed.

Table 3-1 Waiting States

Waiting States	Description
Sleeping state	A task enters this state if the counter for the task (registering the number of times the wakeup request has been issued) indicates 0x0 upon the issuance of a slp_tsk or tslp_tsk.
Delayed state	A task enters this state upon the issuance of a dly_tsk.
Waiting state for a semaphore resource	A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a resource from the relevant semaphore upon the issuance of a wai_sem or twai_sem.
Waiting state for an eventflag	A task enters this state if a relevant eventflag does not satisfy a predetermined condition upon the issuance of a wai_flg or twai_flg.
Receiving waiting state for a mailbox	A task enters this state if cannot receive a message from the relevant mailbox upon the issuance of a rcv_mbx or trcv_mbx.
Waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block	A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a fxed-sized memory block from the relevant memory pool upon the issuance of a get_mpf or tget_mpf.

- SUSPENDED state

  State in which processing execution has been suspended forcibly.
  Resumption of processing from the SUSPENDED state starts from the point where the processing execution was suspended. The value of information required for resumption (such as task context) immediately before suspension is therefore restored.

- WAITING-SUSPENDED state

  State in which the WAITING and SUSPENDED states are combined.
  A task enters the SUSPENDED state when the WAITING state is cancelled, or enters the WAITING state when the SUSPENDED state is cancelled.

3.2.2 Task priority

A priority level that determines the order in which that task will be processed in relation to the other tasks is assigned to each task.

As a result, in the RI78V4, the task that has the highest priority level of all the tasks that have entered an executable state (RUNNING state or READY state) is selected and given the CPU use right.

In the RI78V4, the following two types of priorities are used for management purposes.

- Task initial priority
  Priority set when a task is created.

- Task current priority
  This is the general term used to describe the priority level of a task from the time it enters the READY state from the DORMANT state until it returns to the DORMANT state.
  Therefore, the current priority level of a task that enters the READY state from the DORMANT state has the same value as the "initial priority level," and the current priority level when the priority level is changed by issuing chg_pri or ichg_pri is the same value as the "priority level after change".

Note 1 In the RI78V4, a task having a smaller priority number is given a higher priority.

Note 2 The priority that can be specified in a system is in the priority range specified in Task priority information.

3.2.3 Create task

In the RI78V4, the method of creating a task is limited to "static creation by the Kernel Initialization Module".

Tasks therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create
  Static task creation is realized by defining Task information in the system configuration file.
  The RI78V4 executes task creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the Kernel Initialization Module, and handles the created tasks as management targets.

3.2.4 Delete task

In the RI78V4, tasks created statically by the Kernel Initialization Module cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

3.2.5 Basic form of tasks

When coding a task, use a void function with one VP_INT argument (any function name is fine) using the #pragma rtos_task directive.

The extended information specified with Task information, or the start code specified when sta_tsk or ista_tsk is issued, is set for the *exinf* argument.

The following shows the basic form of tasks.

[C Language]

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ............ */          /*Main processing*/

    ext_tsk ( );                /*Terminate invoking task*/
}
```

[Assembly Language]

```
$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)        ;Standard header file definition
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)     ;System information header file definition

    PUBLIC  _func_task
    CSEG
_func_task:
    PUSH    BC          ;Stores the higher 2 bytes of argument exinf into stack
    PUSH    AX          ;Stores the lower 2 bytes of argument exinf into stack

    ; ............              ;Main processing

    BR      !!_ext_tsk          ;Terminate invoking task
    END
```

3.2.6 Internal processing of task

In the RI78V4, original dispatch processing (task scheduling) is executed during task switching.
Therefore, note the following points when coding tasks.

- Coding method
  Code tasks using C or assembly language in the format shown in "3.2.5 Basic form of tasks".

- Stack switching
  In the RI78V4, switching to the stack for the switching destination task (task stack) is executed during task switching.
  The user is therefore not required to code processing related to stack switching in tasks.

- Interrupt status
  In the RI78V4, the initial interrupt state specified in Task information when a task is switched from the READY state to the RUNNING state.
  To change (disable or enable) the interrupt status in the task, writing of #pragma DI or #pragma EI directive and calling of the DI or EI function are therefore required.

- Service call issuance
  Service calls that can be issued in tasks are limited to the service calls that can be issued from tasks.

  Note For details on the valid issuance range of each service call, refer to Table 12-8 to Table 12-16.

3.3 Activate Task

The RI78V4 provides two types of interfaces for task activation: queuing an activation request queuing and not queuing an activation request.

3.3.1 Queuing an activation request

A task (queuing an activation request) is activated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- act_tsk, iact_tsk
  These service calls move a task specified by parameter *tskid* from the DORMANT state to the READY state.
  As a result, the target task is queued at the end on the ready queue corresponding to the initial priority and becomes subject to scheduling by the RI78V4.
  If the target task has been moved to a state other than the DORMANT state when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but increments the activation request counter (by added 0x1 to the wakeup request counter).
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    act_tsk ( tskid );          /*Activate task (queues an activation request)*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 The activation request counter managed by the RI78V4 is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of activation requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

Note 2 An extended information "Extended information: exinf" is passed to the task activated by issuing this service call.

3.3.2 Not queuing an activation request

A task (not queuing an activation request) is activated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- sta_tsk, ista_tsk
  These service calls move a task specified by parameter *tskid* from the DORMANT state to the READY state.
  As a result, the target task is queued at the end on the ready queue corresponding to the initial priority and becomes subject to scheduling by the RI78V4.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP_INT  stacd = 1048575;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    sta_tsk ( tskid, stacd );   /*Activate task (does not queue an activation
                                  request)*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of activation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the DORMANT state, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_OBJ" is returned.

Note 2 An start code "*stacd*" is passed to the task activated by issuing this service call.

3.4 Cancel Task Activation Requests

An activation request is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- can_act
  This service call cancels all of the activation requests queued to the task specified by parameter *tskid* (sets the activation request counter to 0x0).
  When this service call is terminated normally, the number of cancelled activation requests is returned.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER_UINT ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ercd = can_act ( tskid );   /*Cancel task activation requests*/

    if ( ercd >= 0x0 ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

3.5 Terminate Task

The RI78V4 provides two types of interfaces for task termination: termination of invoking task and forced termination of other tasks.

3.5.1 Terminate invoking task

An invoking task is terminated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- ext_tsk
  This service call moves an invoking task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state.
  As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.
  If an activation request has been queued to the invoking task (the activation request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call moves the task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state, decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter), and then moves the task from the DORMANT state to the READY state.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ............ */

    ext_tsk ( );                /*Terminate invoking task*/
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not return the OS resource that the invoking task acquired by issuing a service call such as sig_sem or get_mpf. The OS resource have been acquired must therefore be returned before issuing this service call.

Note 2 When moving a task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state, this service call initializes the following information to values that are set during task creation.

- Priority (current priority)
- Wakeup request count
- Suspension count
- Interrupt status

Note 3 If the return instruction is written in a task, it executes the same operation as this service call.

Note 4 In the RI78V4, code efficiency is enhanced by coding the return instruction as a "Terminate invoking task".

3.5.2 Terminate task

Other tasks are forcibly terminated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- ter_tsk
  This service call forcibly moves a task specified by parameter *tskid* to the DORMANT state.
  As a result, the target task is excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.
  If an activation request has been queued to the target task (the activation request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call moves the task to the DORMANT state, decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter), and then moves the task from the DORMANT state to the READY state.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ter_tsk ( tskid );          /*Terminate task*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not return the OS resource that the target task acquired by issuing a service call such as sig_sem or get_mpf. The OS resource have been acquired must therefore be returned before issuing this service call.

Note 2 When moving a task to the DORMANT state, this service call initializes the following information to values that are set during task creation.

- Priority (current priority)
- Wakeup request count
- Suspension count
- Interrupt status

3.6 Change Task Priority

The priority is changed by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- chg_pri, ichg_pri
  These service calls change the priority of the task specified by parameter *tskid* (current priority) to a value specified by parameter *tskpri*.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    PRI     tskpri = 15;        /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    chg_pri ( tskid, tskpri );  /*Change task priority*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note If the target task is in the RUNNING or READY state after this service call is issued, this service call re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri*, following priority change processing.

3.7 Reference Task State

A task status is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- ref_tsk
  Stores task state packet (such as current status) of the task specified by parameter *tskid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rtsk*.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RTSK  pk_rtsk;            /*Declares data structure*/
    STAT    tskstat;            /*Declares variable*/
    PRI     tskpri;             /*Declares variable*/
    STAT    tskwait;            /*Declares variable*/
    ID      wobjid;             /*Declares variable*/
    UINT    actcnt;             /*Declares variable*/
    UINT    wupcnt;             /*Declares variable*/
    UINT    suscnt;             /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ref_tsk ( tskid, &pk_rtsk );/*Reference task state*/

    tskstat = pk_rtsk.tskstat;  /*Reference task current state*/
    tskpri = pk_rtsk.tskpri;    /*Reference task current priority*/
    tskwait = pk_rtsk.tskwait;  /*Reference reason for waiting*/
    wobjid = pk_rtsk.wobjid;    /*Reference object ID number for which the task is
                                  waiting*/
    actcnt = pk_rtsk.actcnt;    /*Reference activation request count*/
    wupcnt = pk_rtsk.wupcnt;    /*Reference wakeup request count*/
    suscnt = pk_rtsk.suscnt;    /*Reference suspension count*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note For details about the task state packet, refer to "12.5.1 Task state packet".

CHAPTER 4 TASK DEPENDENT SYNCHRONIZATION FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the task dependent synchronization functions performed by the RI78V4.

4.1 Outline

The RI78V4 provides several task-dependent synchronization functions.

4.2 Put Task to Sleep

A task is moved to the sleeping state (waiting forever or with timeout) by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- slp_tsk
  As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.
  If a wakeup request has been queued to the target task (the wakeup request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter).
  The sleeping state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Sleeping State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing wup_tsk.	E_OK
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing iwup_tsk.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ercd = slp_tsk ( );         /*Put task to sleep (waiting forever)*/

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
```

```
}
```

- tslp_tsk

This service call moves an invoking task from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (sleeping state).
As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.
If a wakeup request has been queued to the target task (the wakeup request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter).
The sleeping state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Sleeping State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing wup_tsk.	E_OK
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing iwup_tsk.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    TMO     tmout = 3600;       /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ercd = tslp_tsk ( tmout );  /*Put task to sleep (with timeout)*/

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Timeout processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to slp_tsk will be executed.

4.3 Wakeup Task

A task is woken up by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- wup_tsk, iwup_tsk
  These service calls cancel the WAITING state (sleeping state) of the task specified by parameter *tskid*.
  As a result, the target task is moved from the sleeping state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.
  If the target task is in a state other than the sleeping state when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but increments the wakeup request counter (by added 0x1 to the wakeup request counter).
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    wup_tsk ( tskid );          /*Wakeup task*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The wakeup request counter managed by the RI78V4 is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of wakeup requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

4.4 Cancel Task Wakeup Requests

A wakeup request is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- can_wup, ican_wup
  These service calls cancel all of the wakeup requests queued to the task specified by parameter *tskid* (the wakeup request counter is set to 0x0).
  When this service call is terminated normally, the number of cancelled wakeup requests is returned.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER_UINT ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ercd = can_wup ( tskid );   /*Cancel task wakeup requests*/

    if ( ercd >= 0x0 ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

4.5 Release Task from Waiting

The WAITING state is forcibly cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- rel_wai, irel_wai
  These service calls forcibly cancel the WAITING state of the task specified by parameter *tskid*.
  As a result, the target task unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.
  "E_RLWAI" is returned from the service call that triggered the move to the WAITING state (slp_tsk, wai_sem, or the like) to the task whose WAITING state is cancelled by this service call.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    rel_wai ( tskid );          /*Release task from waiting*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of forced cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the WAITING or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is returned.

4.6 Suspend Task

A task is moved to the SUSPENDED state by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- sus_tsk, isus_tsk
  These service calls add 0x1 to the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid*, and then move the target task from the RUNNING state to the SUSPENDED state, from the READY state to the SUSPENDED state, or from the WAITING state to the WAITING-SUSPENDED state.
  If the target task has moved to the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but only the suspend request counter increment processing is executed.
  The SUSPENDED state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

SUSPENDED State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A cancel request was issued as a result of issuing rsm_tsk.	E_OK
A cancel request was issued as a result of issuing irsm_tsk.	E_OK
Forced release from suspended (accept frsm_tsk while suspended).	E_OK
Forced release from suspended (accept ifrsm_tsk while suspended).	E_OK

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    sus_tsk ( tskid );          /*Suspend task*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 If the target task is the invoking task when this service call is issued, it is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.

Note 2 The suspend request counter managed by the RI78V4 is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of suspend requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

4.7 Resume Suspended Task

The SUSPENDED state is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- rsm_tsk, irsm_tsk
  This service call subtracts 0x1 from the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid*, and then cancels the SUSPENDED state of the target task.
  As a result, the target task is moved from the SUSPENDED state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the WAITING state.
  If a suspend request is queued (subtraction result is other than 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but only the suspend request counter decrement processing is executed.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    rsm_tsk ( tskid );          /*Resume suspended task*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is therefore returned.

- frsm_tsk, ifrsm_tsk
  These service calls set the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid* to 0x1 f, and then forcibly cancel the SUSPENDED state of the target task.
  As a result, the target task is moved from the SUSPENDED state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the WAITING state.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    frsm_tsk ( tskid );         /*Forcibly resume suspended task*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of forced cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is therefore returned.

4.8 Delay Task

A task is moved to the delayed state by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- dly_tsk
  This service call moves the invoking task from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (delayed state).
  As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.
  The delayed state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Delayed State Cancel Operation	Return Value
Delay time specified by parameter *dlytim* has elapsed.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    RELTIM  dlytim = 3600;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ercd = dly_tsk ( dlytim );  /*Delay task*/

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

CHAPTER 5 SYNCHRONIZATION AND COMMUNICATION FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the synchronization and communication functions performed by the RI78V4.

5.1 Outline

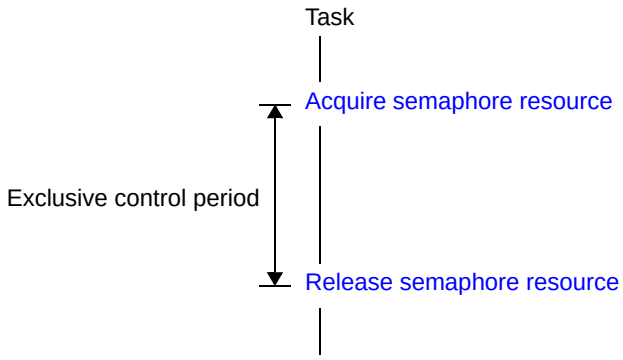
The synchronization and communication functions of the RI78V4 consist of Semaphores, Eventflags, and Mailboxes that are provided as means for realizing exclusive control, queuing, and communication among tasks.

5.2 Semaphores

In the RI78V4, non-negative number counting semaphores are provided as a means (exclusive control function) for preventing contention for limited resources (hardware devices, library function, etc.) arising from the required conditions of simultaneously running tasks.

The following shows a processing flow when using a semaphore.

Figure 5-1 Processing Flow (Semaphore)



5.2.1 Create semaphore

In the RI78V4, the method of creating a semaphore is limited to "static creation by the Kernel Initialization Module".

Semaphores therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create
  Static semaphore creation is realized by defining Semaphore information in the system configuration file.
  The RI78V4 executes semaphore creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the Kernel Initialization Module, and handles the created semaphores as management targets.

5.2.2 Delete semaphore

In the RI78V4, semaphores created statically by the Kernel Initialization Module cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

5.2.3 Release semaphore resource

A resource is returned by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- sig_sem, isig_sem
  These service calls return the resource to the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (adds 0x1 to the semaphore counter).
  If a task is queued in the wait queue of the target semaphore when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the resource is passed to the relevant task (first task of wait queue).
  As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore resource) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      semid = ID_semA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    sig_sem ( semid );          /*Release semaphore resource*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 If the first task linked in the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The semaphore counter managed by the RI78V4 is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of resources exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

5.2.4 Acquire semaphore resource

A resource is acquired (waiting forever, polling, or with timeout) by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- wai_sem
  This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).
  If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target semaphore wait queue in the order of resource acquisition request (FIFO order).
  As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore resource).
  The waiting state for a semaphore state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Semaphore State Cancel Operation	Return Value
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing sig_sem.	E_OK
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing isig_sem.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      semid = ID_semA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ercd = wai_sem ( semid );   /*Acquire semaphore resource (waiting forever)*/

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

- pol_sem

This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).
If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but "E_TMOUT" is returned.
The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      semid = ID_semA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ercd = pol_sem ( semid );   /*Acquire semaphore resource (polling)*/

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Polling success processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Polling failure processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

- twai_sem

This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).
If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target semaphore wait queue in the order of resource acquisition request (FIFO order).
As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore resource).
The waiting state for a semaphore resource is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Semaphore Resource Cancel Operation	Return Value
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing sig_sem.	E_OK
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing isig_sem.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      semid = ID_semA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    TMO     tmout = 3600;       /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

                                /*Acquire semaphore resource (with timeout)*/
    ercd = twai_sem ( semid, tmout );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Timeout processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to wai_sem will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to pol_sem will be executed.

5.2.5 Reference semaphore state

A semaphore status is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- ref_sem
  Stores semaphore state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rsem*.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      semid = ID_semA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RSEM  pk_rsem;            /*Declares data structure*/
    ID      wtskid;             /*Declares variable*/
    UINT    semcnt;             /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ref_sem ( semid, &pk_rsem );/*Reference semaphore state*/

    wtskid = pk_rsem.wtskid;    /*Reference ID number of the task at the head of
                                  the wait queue*/
    semcnt = pk_rsem.semcnt;    /*Reference current resource count*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

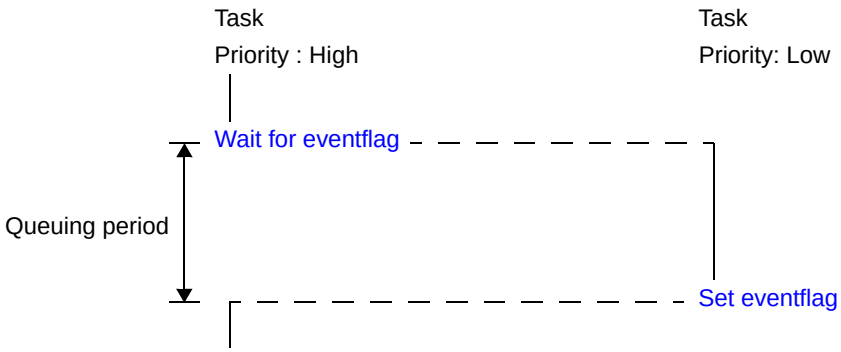
Note For details about the semaphore state packet, refer to "12.5.2 Semaphore state packet".

5.3 Eventflags

The RI78V4 provides 16-bit eventflags as a queuing function for tasks, such as keeping the tasks waiting for execution, until the results of the execution of a given processing program are output.

The following shows a processing flow when using an eventflag.

Figure 5-2 Processing Flow (Eventflag)



5.3.1 Create eventflag

In the RI78V4, the method of creating an eventflag is limited to "static creation by the Kernel Initialization Module".

Eventflags therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create
  Static eventflag creation is realized by defining Eventflag information in the system configuration file.
  The RI78V4 executes eventflag creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the Kernel Initialization Module, and handles the created eventflags as management targets.

  Note In the RI78V4, "0x0" is the initial bit pattern for eventflag creation processing.

5.3.2 Delete eventflag

In the RI78V4, eventflags created statically by the Kernel Initialization Module cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

5.3.3 Set eventflag

A bit pattern is set by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- set_flg, iset_flg
  These service calls set the result of ORing the bit pattern of the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* and the bit pattern specified by parameter *setptn* as the bit pattern of the target eventflag.
  If the required condition of the task queued to the target eventflag wait queue is satisfied when this service call is issued, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue at the same time as bit pattern setting processing.
  As a result, the relevant task is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      flgid = ID_flgA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  setptn = 0B1010;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    set_flg ( flgid, setptn );  /*Set eventflag*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 If the task linked in the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 If the bit pattern set to the target eventflag is B'1100 and the bit pattern specified by parameter *setptn* is B'1010 when this service call is issued, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is set to B'1110.

5.3.4 Clear eventflag

A bit pattern is cleared by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- clr_flg
  This service call sets the result of ANDing the bit pattern set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* and the bit pattern specified by parameter *clrptn* as the bit pattern of the target eventflag.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      flgid = ID_flgA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  clrptn = 0B1010;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    clr_flg ( flgid, clrptn );  /*Clear eventflag*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of clear requests. If the bit pattern has been cleared, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 If the bit pattern set to the target eventflag is B'1100 and the bit pattern specified by parameter *clrptn* is B'1010 when this service call is issued, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is set to B'1110.

Note 3 This service call does not cancel tasks in the waiting state for an eventflag.

5.3.5 Wait for eventflag

A bit pattern is checked (waiting forever, polling, or with timeout) by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- wai_flg
  This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waiptn* and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.
  If a bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set for the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.
  If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, the invoking task is queued to the target eventflag wait queue.
  As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag).
  The waiting state for an eventflag is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for an Eventflag Cancel Operation	Return Value
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing set_flg.	E_OK
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing iset_flg.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW
  Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW
  Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      flgid = ID_flgA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  waiptn = 0B1110;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    MODE    wfmode = TWF_ANDW;  /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  p_flgptn;           /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

                                /*Wait for eventflag (waiting forever)*/
    ercd = wai_flg ( flgid, waiptn, wfmode, &p_flgptn );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
```

```
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 In the RI78V4, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.

Note 2 The RI78V4 performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

- pol_flg

This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waiptn* and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.
If the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set to the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.
If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, "E_TMOUT" is returned.
The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW
  Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW
  Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      flgid = ID_flgA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  waiptn = 0B1110;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    MODE    wfmode = TWF_ANDW;  /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  p_flgptn;           /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

                                /*Wait for eventflag (polling)*/
    ercd = pol_flg ( flgid, waiptn, wfmode, &p_flgptn );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Polling success processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Polling failure processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 In the RI78V4, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.

Note 2 The RI78V4 performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

- twai_flg

This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waiptn* and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.
If the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set to the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.
If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, the invoking task is queued to the target eventflag wait queue.
As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag).
The waiting state for an eventflag is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for an Eventflag Cancel Operation	Return Value
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing set_flg.	E_OK
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing iset_flg.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW
  Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW
  Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      flgid = ID_flgA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  waiptn = 0B1110;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    MODE    wfmode = TWF_ANDW;  /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  p_flgptn;           /*Declares variable*/
    TMO     tmout = 3600;       /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

                                /*Wait for eventflag (with timeout)*/
    ercd = twai_flg ( flgid, waiptn, wfmode, &p_flgptn, tmout );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Timeout processing*/
    }
```

```
    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 In the RI78V4, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.

Note 2 The RI78V4 performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

Note 3 When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time tmout, processing equivalent to wai_flg will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to pol_flg will be executed.

5.3.6 Reference eventflag state

An eventflag status is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- ref_flg
  Stores eventflag state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rflg*.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      flgid = ID_flgA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RFLG  pk_rflg;            /*Declares data structure*/
    ID      wtskid;             /*Declares variable*/
    FLGPTN  flgptn;             /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ref_flg ( flgid, &pk_rflg );/*Reference eventflag state*/

    wtskid = pk_rflg.wtskid;    /*Reference ID number of the task at the head of
                                  the wait queue*/
    flgptn = pk_rflg.flgptn;    /*Reference current bit pattern*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

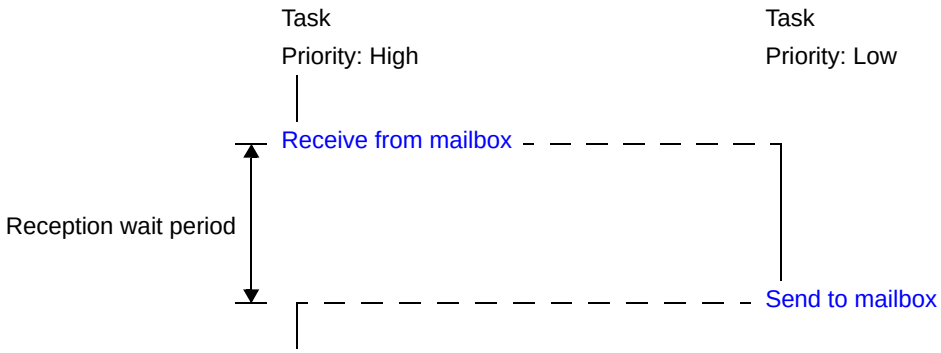
Note For details about the eventflag state packet, refer to "12.5.3 Eventflag state packet".

5.4 Mailboxes

The RI78V4 provides a mailbox, as a communication function between tasks, that hands over the execution result of a given processing program to another processing program.

The following shows a processing flow when using a mailbox.

Figure 5-3 Processing Flow (Mailbox)



5.4.1 Create mailbox

In the RI78V4, the method of creating a mailbox is limited to "static creation by the Kernel Initialization Module".

Mailboxes therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create
  Static mailbox creation is realized by defining Mailbox information in the system configuration file.
  The RI78V4 executes mailbox creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the Kernel Initialization Module, and handles the created mailboxes as management targets.

5.4.2 Delete mailbox

In the RI78V4, mailboxes created statically by the Kernel Initialization Module cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

5.4.3 Message

The information exchanged among processing programs via the mailbox is called "messages".

Messages can be transmitted to any processing program via the mailbox, but it should be noted that, in the case of the synchronization and communication functions of the RI78V4, only the start address of the message is handed over to the receiving processing program, but the message contents are not copied to a separate area.

- Securement of memory area
  In the case of the RI78V4, it is recommended to use the memory area secured by issuing service calls such as get_mpf and pget_mpf for messages.

  Note The RI78V4 uses the message start area as a link area during queuing to the wait queue for mailbox messages. Therefore, if the memory area for messages is secured from other than the memory area controlled by the RI78V4, it must be secured from 4-byte aligned addresses.

- Basic form of messages
  In the RI78V4, the message contents and length are prescribed as follows, according to the attributes of the mailbox to be used.

  - When using a mailbox with the TA_MFIFO attribute
    The contents and length past the first 4 bytes of a message (system reserved area msgque) are not restricted in particular in the RI78V4.
    Therefore, the contents and length past the first 4 bytes are prescribed among the processing programs that exchange data using the mailbox with the TA_MFIFO attribute.
    The following shows the basic form of coding TA_MFIFO attribute messages in C.

    [Message packet for TA_MFIFO attribute]

```
typedef struct  t_msg {
    struct  t_msg   __far   *msgque;    /*Reserved for future use*/
} T_MSG;
```

  - When using a mailbox with the TA_MPRI attribute
    The contents and length past the first 5 bytes of a message (system reserved area msgque, priority level msgpri) are not restricted in particular in the RI78V4.
    Therefore, the contents and length past the first 5 bytes are prescribed among the processing programs that exchange data using the mailbox with the TA_MPRI attribute.
    The following shows the basic form of coding TA_MPRI attribute messages in C.

    [Message packet for TA_MPRI attribute]

```
typedef struct  t_msg_pri {
    struct  t_msg   __far   *msgque;    /*Reserved for future use*/
    PRI     msgpri;                     /*Message priority*/
} T_MSG_PRI;
```

    Note 1 In the RI78V4, a message having a smaller priority number is given a higher priority.

    Note 2 A value between 1 and 31 can be specified for message priority.

    Note 3 For details about the message packet, refer to "12.5.4 Message packet".

5.4.4 Send to mailbox

A message is transmitted by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- snd_mbx
  This service call transmits the message specified by parameter *pk_msg* to the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid* (queues the message in the wait queue).
  If a task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue when this service call is issued, the message is not queued but handed over to the relevant task (first task of the wait queue).
  As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (receiving waiting state for a mailbox) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP      p_blk;              /*Declares variable*/
    char    *p;                 /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mbxid = ID_mbxA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_MSG_PRI       *pk_msg;    /*Declares data structure*/

    /* ............ */

    get_mpf ( mpfid, &p_blk );  /*Secures memory area (for message)*/

                                /*Initializes variable*/
    p = (char *)p_blk + sizeof (T_MSG_PRI);

    while ( expr ) {
            *p++ = ............ /*Creates message (contents)*/
    }

                                /*Initializes data structure*/
    (T_MSG_PRI *)p_blk->msgpri = 8;

                                /*Send to mailbox*/
    snd_mbx ( mbxid, (T_MSG_PRI *)p_blk );

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 If the first task of the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 Messages are queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order defined by Attribute (queuing method): mbxatr during configuration (FIFO order or priority order).

Note 3 With the RI78V4 mailbox, only the start address of the message is handed over to the receiving processing program, but the message contents are not copied to a separate area. The message contents can therefore be rewritten even after this service call is issued.

Note 4 For details about the message packet, refer to "12.5.4 Message packet".

5.4.5 Receive from mailbox

A message is received (waiting forever, polling, or with timeout) by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- rcv_mbx
  This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.
  If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but the invoking task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order of message reception request (FIFO order).
  As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (receiving waiting for a mailbox).
  The receiving waiting for a mailbox is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Receiving Waiting for a Mailbox Cancel Operation	Return Value
A message was transmitted to the target mailbox as a result of issuing snd_mbx.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mbxid = ID_mbxA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_MSG   *ppk_msg;           /*Declares data structure*/

    /* ............ */

                                /*Receive from mailbox (waiting forever)*/
    ercd = rcv_mbx ( mbxid, &ppk_msg );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note For details about the message packet, refer to "12.5.4 Message packet".

- prcv_mbx
  This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.
  If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but "E_TMOUT" is returned.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mbxid = ID_mbxA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_MSG   *ppk_msg;           /*Declares data structure*/

    /* ............ */

                                /*Receive from mailbox (polling)*/
    ercd = prcv_mbx ( mbxid, &ppk_msg );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Polling success processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Polling failure processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note For details about the message packet, refer to "12.5.4 Message packet".

- trcv_mbx

This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.
If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but the invoking task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order of message reception request (FIFO order).
As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (receiving waiting for a mailbox).
The receiving waiting for a mailbox is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Receiving Waiting for a Mailbox Cancel Operation	Return Value
A message was transmitted to the target mailbox as a result of issuing snd_mbx.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mbxid = ID_mbxA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_MSG   *ppk_msg;           /*Declares data structure*/
    TMO     tmout = 3600;       /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

                                /*Receive from mailbox (with timeout)*/
    ercd = trcv_mbx ( mbxid, &ppk_msg, tmout );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Timeout processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to rcv_mbx will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to prcv_mbx will be executed.

Note 2 For details about the message packet, refer to "12.5.4 Message packet".

5.4.6 Reference mailbox state

A mailbox status is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- ref_mbx
  Stores mailbox state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rmbx*.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      mbxid = ID_mbxA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RMBX  pk_rmbx;            /*Declares data structure*/
    ID      wtskid;             /*Declares variable*/
    T_MSG   *pk_msg;            /*Declares data structure*/

    /* ............ */

    ref_mbx ( mbxid, &pk_rmbx );/*Reference mailbox state*/

    wtskid = pk_rmbx.wtskid;    /*Reference ID number of the task at the head of
                                  the wait queue*/
    pk_msg = pk_rmbx.pk_msg;    /*Referenc start address of the message packet at
                                  the head of the message queue*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note For details about the mailbox state packet, refer to "12.5.5 Mailbox state packet".

CHAPTER 6 MEMORY POOL MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the memory pool management functions performed by the RI78V4.

6.1 Outline

The statically secured memory areas in the Kernel Initialization Module are subject to management by the memory pool management functions of the RI78V4.

In the RI78V4, the allocation destinations (segment names) of management objects modularized for each function are specified.

The following lists the segment names prescribed in the RI78V4.

- k_system segment
  Area where the RI78V4's core processing part and main processing part of service calls provided by the RI78V4 are to be allocated.

- k_info segment
  Area where information items such as the RI78V4 version are to be allocated.

- k_const segment
  Area where initial information items related to OS resources that do not change dynamically are allocated as system information tables.

- k_data segment
  Area where information items required to implement the functionalities provided by the RI78V4 and information items related to OS resources that change dynamically are allocated as management objects.

- k_stack segment
  Area where the system stack and the task stack are to be allocated.

- k_work0, k_work1, k_work2, k_work3 segment
  Area where fixed-sized memory pools are to be allocated.

6.2 Fixed-Sized Memory Pool

When a dynamic memory manipulation request is issued from a processing program in the RI78V4, the fixed-sized memory pool is provided as a usable memory area.

Dynamic memory manipulation of the fixed-sized memory pool is executed in fixed size memory block units.

6.2.1 Create fixed-sized memory pool

In the RI78V4, the method of creating a fixed-sized memory pool is limited to "static creation by the Kernel Initialization Module".

Fixed-sized memory pools therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create
  Static fixed-sized memory pool creation is realized by defining Fixed-sized memory pool information in the system configuration file.
  The RI78V4 executes fixed-sized memory pool creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the Kernel Initialization Module, and handles the created fixed-sized memory pools as management targets.

6.2.2 Delete fixed-sized memory pool

In the RI78V4, fixed-sized memory pools created statically by the Kernel Initialization Module cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

6.2.3 Acquire fixed-sized memory block

A memory block is acquired (waiting forever, polling, or with timeout) by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- get_mpf
  This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.
  If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue in the order of memory block acquisition request (FIFO order).
  As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block).
  The waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Fixed-sized Memory Block Cancel Operation	Return Value
A memory block was returned to the target fixed-sized memory pool as a result of issuing rel_mpf.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP      p_blk;              /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

                                /*Acquire fixed-sized memory block (wait
                                  forever)*/
    ercd = get_mpf ( mpfid, &p_blk );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/

                                /*Release fixed-sized memory block*/
        rel_mpf ( mpfid, p_blk );
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
```

```
}
```

- pget_mpf

  This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.
  If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but "E_TMOUT" is returned.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP      p_blk;              /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

                                /*Acquire fixed-sized memory block (polling)*/
    ercd = pget_mpf ( mpfid, &p_blk );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Polling success processing*/

                                /*Release fixed-sized memory block*/
        rel_mpf ( mpfid, p_blk );
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Polling failure processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

- tget_mpf

This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.
If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue in the order of memory block acquisition request (FIFO order).
As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block).
The waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Fixed-sized memory Block Cancel Operation	Return Value
A memory block was returned to the target fixed-sized memory pool as a result of issuing rel_mpf.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP      p_blk;              /*Declares variable*/
    TMO     tmout = 3600;       /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

                                /*Acquire fixed-sized memory block (with
                                  timeout)*/
    ercd = tget_mpf ( mpfid, &p_blk, tmout );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/

                                /*Release fixed-sized memory block*/
        rel_mpf ( mpfid, p_blk );
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Timeout processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to get_mpf will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to pget_mpf will be executed.

6.2.4 Release fixed-sized memory block

A memory block is returned by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- rel_mpf
  This service call returns the memory block specified by parameter *blk* to the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid*.
  If a task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue when this service call is issued, memory block return processing is not performed but memory blocks are returned to the relevant task (first task of wait queue).
  As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP      blk;                /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

                                /*Acquire fixed-sized memory block*/
    ercd = get_mpf ( mpfid, &blk );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Normal termination processing*/

                                /*Release fixed-sized memory block*/
        rel_mpf ( mpfid, blk );
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 If the first task of the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The RI78V4 does not clear the memory blocks before returning them. The contents of the returned memory blocks are therefore undefined.

6.2.5 Reference fixed-sized memory pool state

A fixed-sized memory pool status is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- ref_mpf
  Stores fixed-sized memory pool state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rmpf*.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RMPF  pk_rmpf;            /*Declares data structure*/
    ID      wtskid;             /*Declares variable*/
    UINT    fblkcnt;            /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ref_mpf ( mpfid, &pk_rmpf );/*Reference fixed-sized memory pool state*/

    wtskid = pk_rmpf.wtskid;    /*Reference ID number of the task at the head of
                                  the wait queue*/
    fblkcnt = pk_rmpf.fblkcnt;  /*Reference number of free memory blocks*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note For details about the fixed-sized memory pool state packet, refer to "12.5.6 Fixed-sized memory pool state packet".

CHAPTER 7 TIME MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the time management functions performed by the RI78V4.

7.1 Outline

The time management functions of the RI78V4 include Delayed Wakeup, Timeout, and Cyclic Handlers that use timer interrupts created as fixed intervals, as means for realizing time-dependent processing.

Note The RI78V4 does not execute initialization of hardware that creates timer interrupts (clock controller, etc.). This initialization processing must therefore be coded by the user in the Boot Processing or Initialization Routine.

7.2 Timer Handler

The timer handler is a dedicated time control processing routine that consists of the processing required to realize delayed wakeup of tasks, timeout during the WAITING state, and cyclic handler activation, and is called from the interrupt handler that is activated upon output of a timer interrupt.

Note The timer handler is part of the functions provided by the RI78V4. The user therefore need not code the processing contents of the timer handler.

7.2.1 Define timer handler

Timer handler registration is realized by coding the timer handler (function name: Timer_Handler) call processing in the interrupt handler to be activated upon occurrence of a timer interrupt.

A timer handler call example is described below.

```
#pragma rtos_interrupt  INTTM00 func_inthdr

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_inthdr ( void )
{
    Timer_Handler ();           /*Call timer handler*/

    return;                     /*Terminate timer handler*/
}
```

7.3 Delayed Wakeup

Delayed wakeup the operation that makes the invoking task transit from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state during the interval until a given length of time has elapsed, and makes that task move from the WAITING state to the READY state once the given length of time has elapsed.

Delayed wakeup is implemented by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

Table 7-1 Delayed Wakeup

Service Call	Function
dly_tsk	Delay task.

7.4 Timeout

Timeout is the operation that makes the target task move from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state during the interval until a given length of time has elapsed if the required condition issued from a task is not immediately satisfied, and makes that task move from the WAITING state to the READY state regardless of whether the required condition is satisfied once the given length of time has elapsed.

A timeout is implemented by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

Table 7-2 Timeout

Service Call	Function
tslp_tsk	Put task to sleep.
twai_sem	Acquire semaphore resource.
twai_flg	Wait for eventflag.
trcv_mbx	Receive from mailbox.
tget_mpf	Acquire fixed-sized memory block.

7.5 Cyclic Handlers

The cyclic handler is a routine dedicated to cycle processing that is activated periodically at a constant interval (activation cycle), and is called from the Timer Handler.

The RI78V4 handles the cyclic handler as a "non-task (module independent from tasks)". Therefore, even if a task with the highest priority in the system is being executed, the processing is suspended when a specified activation cycle has come, and the control is passed to the cyclic handler.

7.5.1 Create cyclic handler

In the RI78V4, the method of creating a cyclic handler is limited to "static creation by the Kernel Initialization Module".

Cyclic handlers therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create
  Static cyclic handler creation is realized by defining Cyclic handler information in the system configuration file.
  The RI78V4 executes cyclic handler creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the Kernel Initialization Module, and handles the created cyclic handlers as management targets.

7.5.2 Delete cyclic handler

In the RI78V4, cyclic handlers created statically by the Kernel Initialization Module cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

7.5.3 Basic form of cyclic handlers

Write cyclic handlers using void type functions that do not have arguments (function: any).
The following shows the basic form of cyclic handlers.

[C Language]

```
#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_cychdr ( void )
{
    /* ............ */          /*Main processing*/

    return;                     /*Terminate cyclic handler*/
}
```

[Assembly Language]

```
$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)        ;Standard header file definition
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)     ;System information header file definition

    PUBLIC  _func_cychdr
    CSEG
_func_cychdr:
    ; ............             ;Main Processing

    RET                         ;Terminate cyclic handler
    END
```

7.5.4 Internal processing of cyclic handler

The RI78V4 handles the cyclic handler as a "non-task".

Moreover, the RI78V4 executes "original pre-processing" when passing control to the cyclic handler, as well as "original post-processing" when regaining control from the cyclic handler.

Therefore, note the following points when coding cyclic handlers.

- Coding method
  Code cyclic handlers using C or assembly language in the format shown in "7.5.3 Basic form of cyclic handlers".

- Stack switching
  The RI78V4 executes processing to switch to the system stack when passing control to the cyclic handler, and processing to switch to the stack for the switch destination processing program (system stack or task stack) when regaining control from the cyclic handler.
  The user is therefore not required to code processing related to stack switching in cyclic handlers.

- Interrupt status
  Maskable interrupt acknowledgement is prohibited in the RI78V4 when control is passed to the cyclic handler.
  To change (enable) the interrupt status in the cyclic handler, writing of #pragma EI directive and calling of the EI function are therefore required.

- Service call issuance
  The RI78V4 handles the cyclic handler as a "non-task".
  Service calls that can be issued in cyclic handlers are limited to the service calls that can be issued from non-tasks.

  Note 1 For details on the valid issuance range of each service call, refer to Table 12-8 to Table 12-16.

  Note 2 If a service call (ichg_pri, isig_sem, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is issued in order to quickly complete the processing in the cyclic handler during the interval until the processing in the cyclic handler ends, the RI78V4 executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until a return instruction is issued by the cyclic handler, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

7.5.5 Start cyclic handler operation

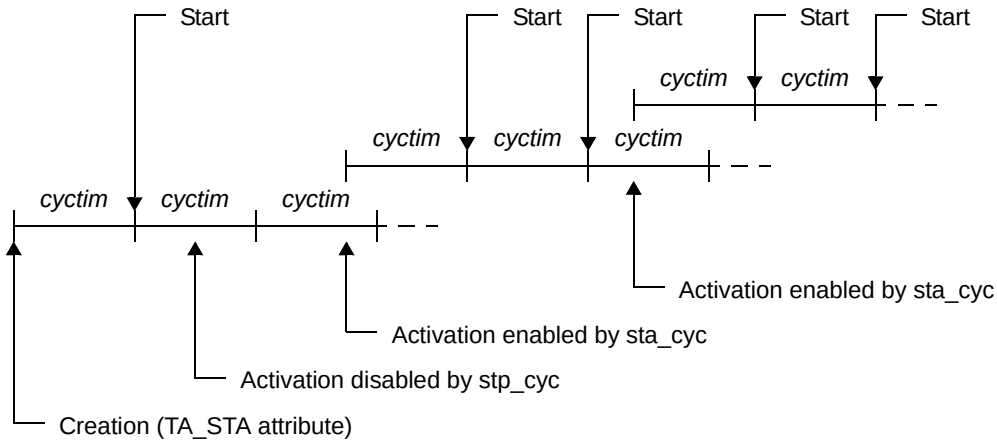
Moving to the operational state (STA state) is implemented by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- sta_cyc
  This service call moves the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* from the non-operational state (STP state) to operational state (STA state).
  As a result, the target cyclic handler is handled as an activation target of the RI78V4.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      cycid = ID_cycA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    sta_cyc ( cycid );          /*Start cyclic handler operation*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note This service call does not perform queuing of start requests. If the target cyclic handler has been moved to the operational state (STA state), only activation cycle re-set processing is executed.
The relative time interval from the output of this service call until the first activation request is output is always the activation phase (activation cycle cyctim) using the output of this service call as the reference point.

[Cyclic handler activation image]



7.5.6 Stop cyclic handler operation

Moving to the non-operational state (STP state) is implemented by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- stp_cyc
  This service call moves the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* from the operational state (STA state) to non-operational state (STP state).
  As a result, the target cyclic handler is excluded from activation targets of the RI78V4 until issuance of sta_cyc.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      cycid = ID_cycA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    stp_cyc ( cycid );          /*Stop cyclic handler operation*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note This service call does not perform queuing of stop requests. If the target cyclic handler has been moved to the non-operational state (STP state), therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

7.5.7 Reference cyclic handler state

A cyclic handler status by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- ref_cyc
  Stores cyclic handler state packet (such as current status) of the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rcyc*.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      cycid = ID_cycA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RCYC  pk_rcyc;            /*Declares data structure*/
    STAT    cycstat;            /*Declares variable*/
    RELTIM  lefttim;            /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ref_cyc ( cycid, &pk_rcyc );/*Reference cyclic handler state*/

    cycstat = pk_rcyc.cycstat;  /*Reference cyclic handler operational state*/
    lefttim = pk_rcyc.lefttim;  /*Reference time left before the next activation*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note For details about the cyclic handler state packet, refer to "12.5.7 Cyclic handler state packet".

CHAPTER 8 SYSTEM STATE MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the system state management functions performed by the RI78V4.

8.1 Outline

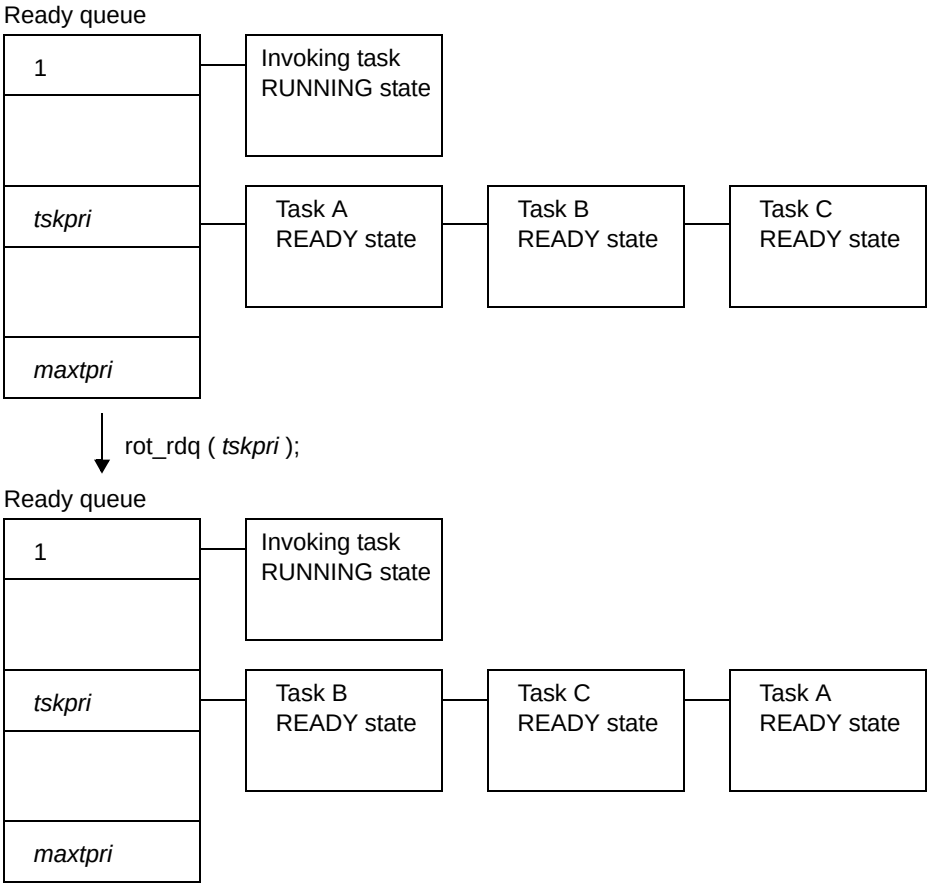
The system state control functions of the RI78V4 include, in addition to functions to manipulate the state of the system, such as transition to the CPU locked state and transition to the dispatching disabled state, functions for referencing the state of the system, such as context type referencing and CPU locked state referencing.

8.2 Rotate Task Precedence

A ready queue is rotated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- rot_rdq, irot_rdq
  This service call re-queues the first task of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri* to the end of the queue to change the task execution order explicitly.
  The following shows the status transition when this service call is used.

Figure 8-1 Rotate Task Precedence



The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_cychdr ( void )
{
    PRI     tskpri = 8;         /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    irot_rdq ( tskpri );        /*Rotate task precedence*/

    /* ............ */

    return;                     /*Terminate cyclic handler*/
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of rotation requests. If no task is queued to the ready queue corresponding to the relevant priority, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 Round-robin scheduling can be implemented by issuing this service call via a cyclic handler in a constant cycle.

Note 3 The ready queue is a hash table that uses priority as the key, and tasks that have entered an executable state (READY state or RUNNING state) are queued in FIFO order.
Therefore, the scheduler realizes the RI78V4's Scheduling System by executing task detection processing from the highest priority level of the ready queue upon activation, and upon detection of queued tasks, giving the CPU use right to the first task of the proper priority level.

8.3 Reference Task ID in the RUNNING State

A RUNNING-state task is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- get_tid, iget_tid
  These service calls store the ID of a task in the RUNNING state in the area specified by parameter *p_tskid*.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_cychdr ( void )
{
    ID      p_tskid;            /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    iget_tid ( &p_tskid );      /*Reference task ID in the RUNNING state*/

    /* ............ */

    return;                     /*Terminate cyclic handler*/
}
```

Note This service call stores TSK_NONE in the area specified by parameter *p_tskid* if no tasks that have entered the RUNNING state exist (all tasks in the IDLE state).

8.4 Lock the CPU

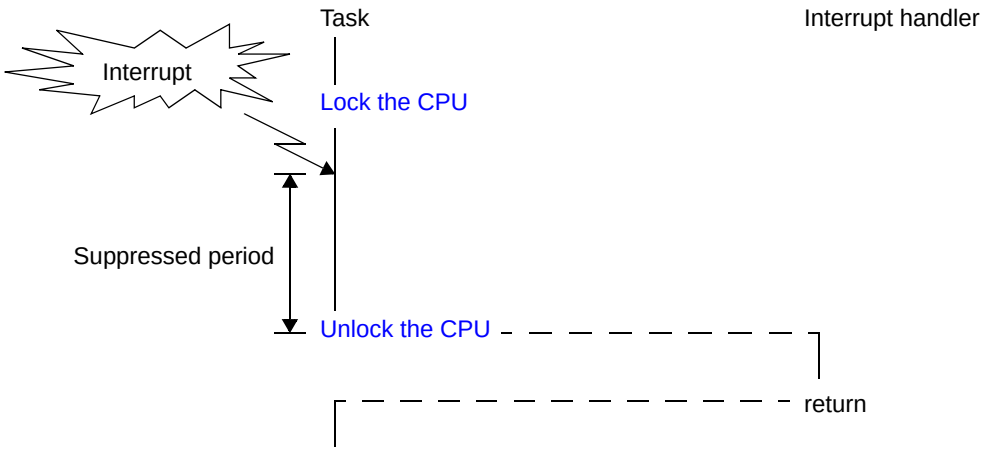
A task is moved to the CPU locked state by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- loc_cpu, iloc_cpu
  These service calls change the system status type to the CPU locked state.
  As a result, maskable interrupt acknowledgment processing is prohibited during the interval from this service call is issued until unl_cpu or iunl_cpu is issued, and service call issuance is also restricted.
  If a maskable interrupt is created during this period, the RI78V4 delays transition to the relevant interrupt processing (interrupt handler) until either unl_cpu or iunl_cpu is issued.
  The service calls that can be issued in the CPU locked state are limited to the one listed below.

Service Call	Function
loc_cpu, iloc_cpu	Lock the CPU.
unl_cpu, iunl_cpu	Unlock the CPU.
sns_ctx	Reference contexts.
sns_loc	Reference CPU state.
sns_dsp	Reference dispatching state.
sns_dpn	Reference dispatch pending state.

The following shows a processing flow when using this service call.

Figure 8-2 Lock the CPU



The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ............ */

    loc_cpu ( );                /*Lock the CPU*/

    /* ............ */          /*CPU locked state*/

    unl_cpu ( );                /*Unlock the CPU*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 The CPU locked state changed by issuing this service call must be cancelled before the processing program that issued this service call ends.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of lock requests. If the system is in the CPU locked state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 3 The RI78V4 implements disabling of maskable interrupt acknowledgment bu manipulating the interrupt mask flag register (MK*xx*) and the in-service priority flag (ISP*x*) of the program status word (PSW). Therefore, manipulating of these registers from the processing program is prohibited from when this service call is issued until unl_cpu or iunl_cpu is issued.

8.5 Unlock the CPU

The CPU locked state is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- unl_cpu, iunl_cpu
  These service calls change the system status to the CPU unlocked state.
  As a result, acknowledge processing of maskable interrupts prohibited through issuance of either loc_cpu or iloc_cpu is enabled, and the restriction on service call issuance is released.
  If a maskable interrupt is created during the interval from when either loc_cpu or iloc_cpu is issued until this service call is issued, the RI78V4 delays transition to the relevant interrupt processing (interrupt handler) until this service call is issued.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ............ */

    loc_cpu ( );                /*Lock the CPU*/

    /* ............ */          /*CPU locked state*/

    unl_cpu ( );                /*Unlock the CPU*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of cancellation requests. If the system is in the CPU unlocked state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

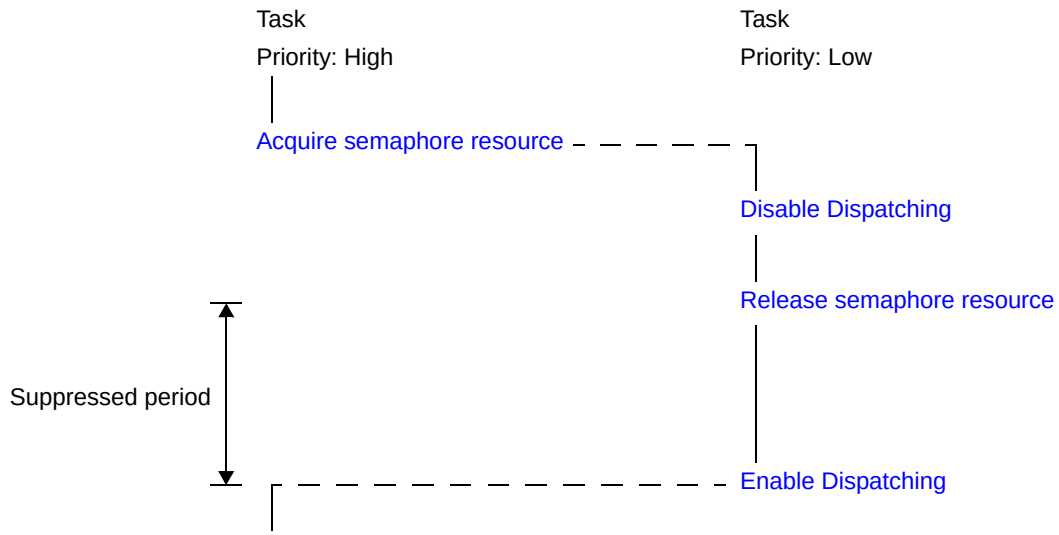
Note 2 The RI78V4 implements enabling of maskable interrupt acknowledgment bu manipulating the interrupt mask flag register (MK*xx*) and the in-service priority flag (ISP*x*) of the program status word (PSW). Therefore, manipulating of these registers from the processing program is prohibited from when loc_cpu or iloc_cpu is issued until this service call is issued.

8.6 Disable Dispatching

A task is moved to the dispatching disabled state by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- dis_dsp
  This service call changes the system status to the dispatching disabled state.
  As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) is disabled from when this service call is issued until ena_dsp is issued.
  If a service call (chg_pri, sig_sem, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when this service call is issued until ena_dsp is issued, the RI78V4 executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until ena_dsp is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.
  The following shows a processing flow when using this service call.

Figure 8-3 Disable Dispatching



The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include        <kernel.h>      /*Standard header file definition*/
#include        <kernel_id.h>   /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ............ */

    dis_dsp ( );                /*Disable dispatching*/

    /* ............ */          /*Dispatching disabled state*/

    ena_dsp ( );                /*Enable dispatching*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of disable requests. If the system is in the dispatching disabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 The dispatching disabled state changed by issuing this service call must be cancelled before the task that issued this service call moves to the DORMANT state.

8.7 Enable Dispatching

The dispatching disabled state is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- ena_dsp
  This service call changes the system status to the dispatching enabled state.
  As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) that has been disabled by issuing dis_dsp is enabled.
  If a service call (chg_pri, sig_sem, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when dis_dsp is issued until this service call is issued, the RI78V4 executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until this service call is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ............ */

    dis_dsp ( );                /*Disable dispatching*/

    /* ............ */          /*Dispatching disabled state*/

    ena_dsp ( );                /*Enable dispatching*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note This service call does not perform queuing of enable requests. If the system is in the dispatching enabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

8.8 Reference Contexts

The context type is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- sns_ctx
  This service call acquires the context type of the processing program that issued this service call (non-task context or task context).
  When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired context type (TRUE: non-task context, FALSE: task context) is returned.

Non-task contexts:	cyclic handler, interrupt handler
task contexts:	task

  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_sub ( void )
{
    BOOL    ercd;               /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ercd = sns_ctx ( );         /*Reference contexts*/

    if ( ercd == TRUE ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Non-task contexts*/
    } else if ( ercd == FALSE ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Task contexts*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

8.9 Reference CPU State

The CPU locked state is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- sns_loc
  This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (CPU locked state or CPU unlocked state).
  When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: CPU locked state, FALSE: CPU unlocked state) is returned.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_sub ( void )
{
    BOOL    ercd;               /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ercd = sns_loc ( );         /*Reference CPU state*/

    if ( ercd == TRUE ) {
        /* ............ */      /*CPU locked state*/
    } else if ( ercd == FALSE ) {
        /* ............ */      /*CPU unlocked state*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note The system enters the CPU locked state when loc_cpu or iloc_cpu is issued, and enters the CPU unlocked state when unl_cpu or iunl_cpu is issued.

8.10 Reference Dispatching State

The dispatching state is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- sns_dsp
  This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (dispatching disabled state or dispatching enabled state).
  When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: dispatching disabled state, FALSE: dispatching enabled state) is returned.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_sub ( void )
{
    BOOL    ercd;               /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ercd = sns_dsp ( );         /*Reference dispatching state*/

    if ( ercd == TRUE ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Dispatching disabled state*/
    } else if ( ercd == FALSE ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Dispatching enabled state*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note The system enters the dispatching disabled state when dis_dsp is issued, and enters the dispatching enabled state when ena_dsp is issued.

8.11 Reference Dispatch Pending State

The dispatch pending state is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- sns_dpn
  This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (whether in dispatch pending state or not).
  When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: dispatch pending state, FALSE: dispatch not-pending state) is returned.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_sub ( void )
{
    BOOL    ercd;               /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ercd = sns_dpn ( );         /*Reference dispatch pending state*/

    if ( ercd == TRUE ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Dispatch pending state*/
    } else if ( ercd == FALSE ) {
        /* ............ */      /*Other state*/
    }

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note The dispatch pending state designates the state in which explicit execution of dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is prohibited by issuing either the dis_dsp, loc_cpu, or iloc_cpu service call, as well as the state during which processing of a non-task is being executed.

CHAPTER 9 INTERRUPT MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the interrupt management functions performed by the RI78V4.

9.1 Outline

The RI78V4 provides as interrupt management functions related to the interrupt handlers activated when a maskable interrupt is occurred.

In the RI78V4, interrupt servicing managed by the RI78V4 is called "interrupt handler", which is distinguished from interrupt servicing that operates without being managed by the RI78V4.

The following lists the differences between interrupt handlers and interrupt servicing.

Table 9-1 Differences Between Interrupt Handlers and Interrupt Servicing

	Interrupt Handler	Interrupt Servicing
Service call issuance	Available	Not available
Interrupt type	Maskable interrupt	Maskable interrupt Software interrupt Reset interrupt
Interrupt priority level	Levels 2, 3	Levels 0, 1 (*)

* It is also possible to assign a level of 2 or 3 to an application that disables multiple interrupts.

Note 1 The interrupt priority level is set using the priority specification flag register of the target CPU.

Note 2 The RI78V4 does not execute initialization of hardware that creates interrupts (clock controller, etc.). This initialization processing must therefore be coded by the user in the Boot Processing or Initialization Routine.

9.2 Interrupt Entry Processing

Interrupt entry processing is a routine dedicated to entry processing that is extracted as a user-own coding module to assign instructions to branch to relevant processing (such as Interrupt Handlers or Boot Processing), to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes the control when an interrupt occurs.

Note For interrupt handlers written using the #pragma rtos_interrupt directive, the user is not required to write the relevant interrupt entry processing because the C compiler automatically outputs the interrupt entry processing corresponding to the interrupt request name.

9.2.1 Basic form of interrupt entry processing

The code of interrupt entry processing varies depending on whether the relevant processing (Interrupt Handlers, Boot Processing, or the like) is allocated to the near area or to the far area.
The following shows examples for coding interrupt entry processing.

[When the relevant processing (Interrupt Handlers, Boot Processing, or the like) is allocated to the near area]

```
RESET   CSEG    AT      0000h   ;Vector table address setting
    DW      _boot               ;Jump to boot processing

INTTM00 CSEG    AT      002ch   ;Vector table address setting
    DW      _func_inthdr        ;Jump to interrupt handler
```

[When the relevant processing (Interrupt Handlers, Boot Processing, or the like) is allocated to the far area]

```
    EXTRN   intent_RESET        ;Declares symbol external reference
    EXTRN   intent_INTTM00      ;Declares symbol external reference

RESET   CSEG    AT      0000h   ;Vector table address setting
    DW      intent_RESET
INTTM00 CSEG    AT      002ch   ;Vector table address setting
    DW      intent_INTTM00

intent  CSEG    UNITP
intent_RESET:
    BR      !!_boot             ;Jump to boot processing
intent_INTTM00:
    BR      !!_func_inthdr      ;Jump to interrupt handler
```

9.2.2 Internal processing of interrupt entry processing

Interrupt entry processing is a routine dedicated to processing of entries called without using the RI78V4 when an interrupt occurs. Therefore, note the following points when coding interrupt entry processing.

- Coding method
  Code interrupt entry processing in assembly language, in formats compliant with the assembler's function calling rules.

- Stack switching
  No stack requiring switching exists in interrupt entry processing execution. The code regarding stack switching during interrupt entry processing is therefore not required.

- Service call issuance
  The RI78V4 prohibits issuance of service calls in interrupt entry processing.

The following lists processing that should be executed in interrupt entry processing.

- Vector table address setting
- Passing of control to relevant processing (Interrupt Handlers, Boot Processing, or the like)

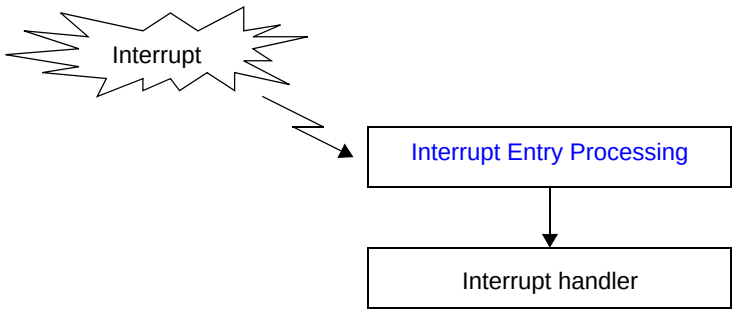
9.3 Interrupt Handlers

The interrupt handler is a routine dedicated to interrupt servicing that is activated when an interrupt occurs, and is called from Interrupt Entry Processing.

The RI78V4 handles the interrupt handler as a "non-task (module independent from tasks)". Therefore, even if a task with the highest priority in the system is being executed, the processing is suspended when an interrupt occurs, and the control is passed to the interrupt handler.

The following shows a processing flow from when an interrupt occurs until the control is passed to the interrupt handler.

Figure 9-1 Processing Flow (Interrupt Handler)



9.3.1 Define interrupt handler

Interrupt handler registration is realized by coding Interrupt Entry Processing (branch instruction to interrupt handler) to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes control upon occurrence of an interrupt.

The code of Interrupt Entry Processing varies depending on whether the interrupt handler is allocated to the near area or to the far area.

Note 1 For the coding method of interrupt entry processing, refer to "9.2 Interrupt Entry Processing".

Note 2 For interrupt handlers written using the #pragma rtos_interrupt directive, the user is not required to write the relevant interrupt entry processing because the C compiler automatically outputs the interrupt entry processing corresponding to the interrupt request name.

9.3.2 Basic form of interrupt handlers

When coding interrupt handlers in C, use void type functions that do not have arguments (any function name is fine) using the #pragma rtos_interrupt directive or __rtos_interrupt qualifier.

The following shows the basic form of coding interrupt handlers in C.

[When using #pragma rtos_interrupt directive]

```
#pragma rtos_interrupt  INTTM00 func_inthdr

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_inthdr ( void )
{
    /* ............ */          /*Main processing*/

    return;                     /*Terminate interrupt handler*/
}
```

[When using __rtos_interrupt qualifier]

```
#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

__rtos_interrupt
void
func_inthdr ( void )
{
    /* ............ */          /*Main processing*/

    return;                     /*Terminate interrupt handler*/
}
```

Note Interrupt handlers coded by using the #pragma rtos_interrupt directive or __rtos_interrupt qualifier can be allocated to the near area only.

When coding interrupt handlers in assembly language, use void type functions that do not have arguments (function: any). Save registers and saddr areas at the beginning of the interrupt handler, call processing to switch to the system stack (function name: _kernel_int_entry), and then call end processing at the end of the interrupt handler (function name: ret_int).

[Assembly Language]

```
$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)          ;Standard header file definition
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)       ;System information header file definition

    PUBLIC  _func_inthdr
    EXTRN   _@RTARG0
    EXTRN   _@RTARG2
    EXTRN   _@RTARG4
    EXTRN   _@RTARG6
    EXTRN   _@SEGAX
    EXTRN   _@SEGDE
    CSEG
_func_inthdr:
    CALL    !!__kernel_int_entry  ;Switches to system stack, Saves registers

    MOVW    AX, _@RTARG0          ;Saves saddr area
    PUSH    AX
    MOVW    AX, _@RTARG2
    PUSH    AX
    MOVW    AX, _@RTARG4
    PUSH    AX
    MOVW    AX, _@RTARG6
    PUSH    AX
    MOVW    AX, _@SEGAX
    PUSH    AX
    MOVW    AX, _@SEGDE
    PUSH    AX

    ; ............          ;Main processing

    POP     AX                    ;Restores saddr area
    MOVW    _@SEGDE, AX
    POP     AX
    MOVW    _@SEGAX, AX
    POP     AX
    MOVW    _@RTARG6, AX
    POP     AX
    MOVW    _@RTARG4, AX
    POP     AX
    MOVW    _@RTARG2, AX
    POP     AX
    MOVW    _@RTARG0, AX

    BR      !!_ret_int            ;Terminate interrupt handler, Restores registers
    END
```

9.3.3 Internal processing of interrupt handler

The RI78V4 handles the interrupt handler as a "non-task".

Moreover, the RI78V4 executes "original pre-processing" when passing control to the interrupt handler, as well as "original post-processing" when regaining control from the interrupt handler.

Therefore, note the following points when coding interrupt handlers.

- Coding method
  Code interrupt handlers using C or assembly language in the format shown in "9.3.2 Basic form of interrupt handlers".

- Stack switching
  For interrupt handlers written using the #pragma rtos_interrupt directive or __rtos_interrupt qualifier, the user is not required to write the relevant stack switch processing because the C compiler automatically outputs the calls for system stack switch processing (function name: _kernel_int_entry).
  When coding interrupt handlers in assembly language, save registers and saddr areas at the beginning of the interrupt handler, call processing to switch to the system stack (function name: _kernel_int_entry), and then call end processing at the end of the interrupt handler (function name: ret_int), explicitly.

- Saving/storing of data in register and saddr areas
  When executing an interrupt handler written with the #pragma rtos_interrupt directive or __rtos_interrupt qualifier, the user does not need to write save/store processing for it because the C compiler automatically outputs "_kernel_int_entry, ret_int". When executing an interrupt handler written in the assembly language, data of general-purpose registers (AX, BC, DE, HL) and registers ES CS is saved and restored in that function execution, by explicitly calling register data save processing (function name: _kernel_int_entry) at the beginning of the interrupt handler, and calling data restore processing (function name: ret_int) at the end of the interrupt handler.
  Saving and restoring of data in the saadr area (_@RTARGxx, _@SEGAX, or _SEGDE) must be written explicitly before and after main processing of interrupt handlers.

  Note 1 Data of the PSW and PC are automatically saved and stored by the CPU.

  Note 2 Saving and restoring of data in the saddr area is unnecessary if functions written in C are not called or service calls are not issued in the interrupt handler.

- Interrupt status
  The RI78V4 goes into the following state when passing control to an interrupt handler.
  Consequently, after control has passed to an interrupt handler, if an interrupt occurs with a higher precedence than the current level, then multiple interrupts can be processed.

  - Acceptance of maskable interrupts is permitted
    IE = 0

  - Interrupts with the precedence below are disabled
    A level-2 interrupt handler process is ongoing: ISP1 = 0, ISP0 = 1
    A level-3 interrupt handler process is ongoing: ISP1 = 1, ISP0 = 0

    Note It is not possible to define level 0 or 1 as an interrupt handler.

  Note Even if the acceptance of maskable interrupts is disabled inside an interrupt handler (IE = 0), it will be enabled (IE = 1) after control returns from the interrupt handler.

- Service call issuance
  The RI78V4 handles the interrupt handler as a "non-task".
  Service calls that can be issued in interrupt handlers are limited to the service calls that can be issued from non-tasks.

  Note 1 For details on the valid issuance range of each service call, refer to Table 12-8 to Table 12-16.

  Note 2 If a service call (ichg_pri, isig_sem, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is issued in order to quickly complete the processing in the interrupt handler during the interval until the processing in the interrupt handler ends, the RI78V4 executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until a return instruction is issued by the interrupt handler, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

9.4 Controlling Enabling/Disabling of Interrupts

9.4.1 Interrupt level under management of the RI78V4

The microcontroller manages four levels of interrupts: level 0 to level 3. On the RI78V4, the interrupt levels at which service calls can be issued from an interrupt are permanently set to levels 2 and 3, these are treated as the interrupt levels managed by the RI78V4.

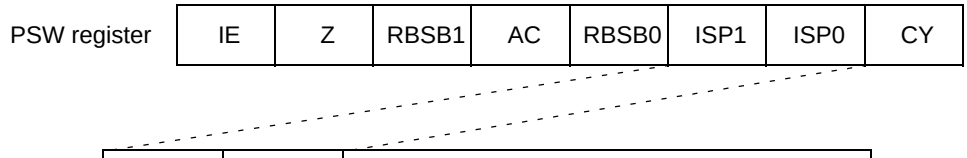
- Interrupt levels 2 and 3 are managed by the RI78V4.
  Service calls can be issued from levels 2 and 3. Interrupt handlers, which are interrupts (including timer interrupts) managed by the RI78V4, must be set to level 2 or 3.

- Interrupt levels 0 and 1 are not managed by the RI78V4
  Service calls cannot be issued from levels 0 or 1. Behavior is not guaranteed if a service call is issued from level 0 or 1. Interrupt processes, which are interrupts not managed by the RI78V4, must be set to level 0 or 1. There is, however, an exception: user applications that disable multiple interrupts (see below) can set interrupts to level 2 or 3.

9.4.2 Controlling enabling/disabling of interrupts in the RI78V4

The RI78V4 uses the "ISP1" and "ISP0" bits in the PSW register to enable and disable interrupts. Set ISP1 to 0 and ISP0 to 1 to disable interrupts in the RI78V4. Set ISP1 to 1 and ISP0 to 1 to enable interrupts in the RI78V4.

Figure 9-2 ISP1 and ISP0 Bits in PSW Register



ISP1	ISP0	Interrupt priority in current process
0	0	Enable level-0 interrupts (While processing a level-1 or level-0 interrupt)
0	1	Enable level-0 and level-1 interrupts (While processing a level-2 interrupt)
1	0	Enable level-0, level-1, and level-2 interrupts (While processing a level-3 interrupt)
1	1	Enable all interrupts (Standby for the acceptance of interrupts)

The "IE" bit of the RI78V4's PSW register inherits the value of the service call or RI78V4-function issuer. EI and DI instructions do not manipulate the "IE" value. As exceptions, however, there are places in the RI78V4 where EI and DI instructions are used.

- Immediately before starting a task specifying interrupts as disabled, a DI instruction is used to set IE to 0.
- Immediately before starting a task specifying interrupts as enabled, an EI instruction is used to set IE to 1.
- Immediately before starting the idle routine, an EI instruction is used to set IE to 1.
- Inside the __kernel_int_entry function, which performs interrupt handler start processing, IE is set to 1.

9.4.3 Controlling enabling/disabling of interrupts in user processes

User applications use the EI function (or EI instruction) and DI function (or DI instruction) to manipulate interrupts. In a task or other user process, using the DI function disables all maskable interrupts from being accepted; using the EI function enables maskable interrupts to be accepted in accordance with the state of the "ISP1" and "ISP0" bits.

The RI78V4 sets whether interrupts are enabled or disabled upon start of the user process. The states are listed below.

Table 9-2 States Enabling and Disabling Interrupts upon Process Start

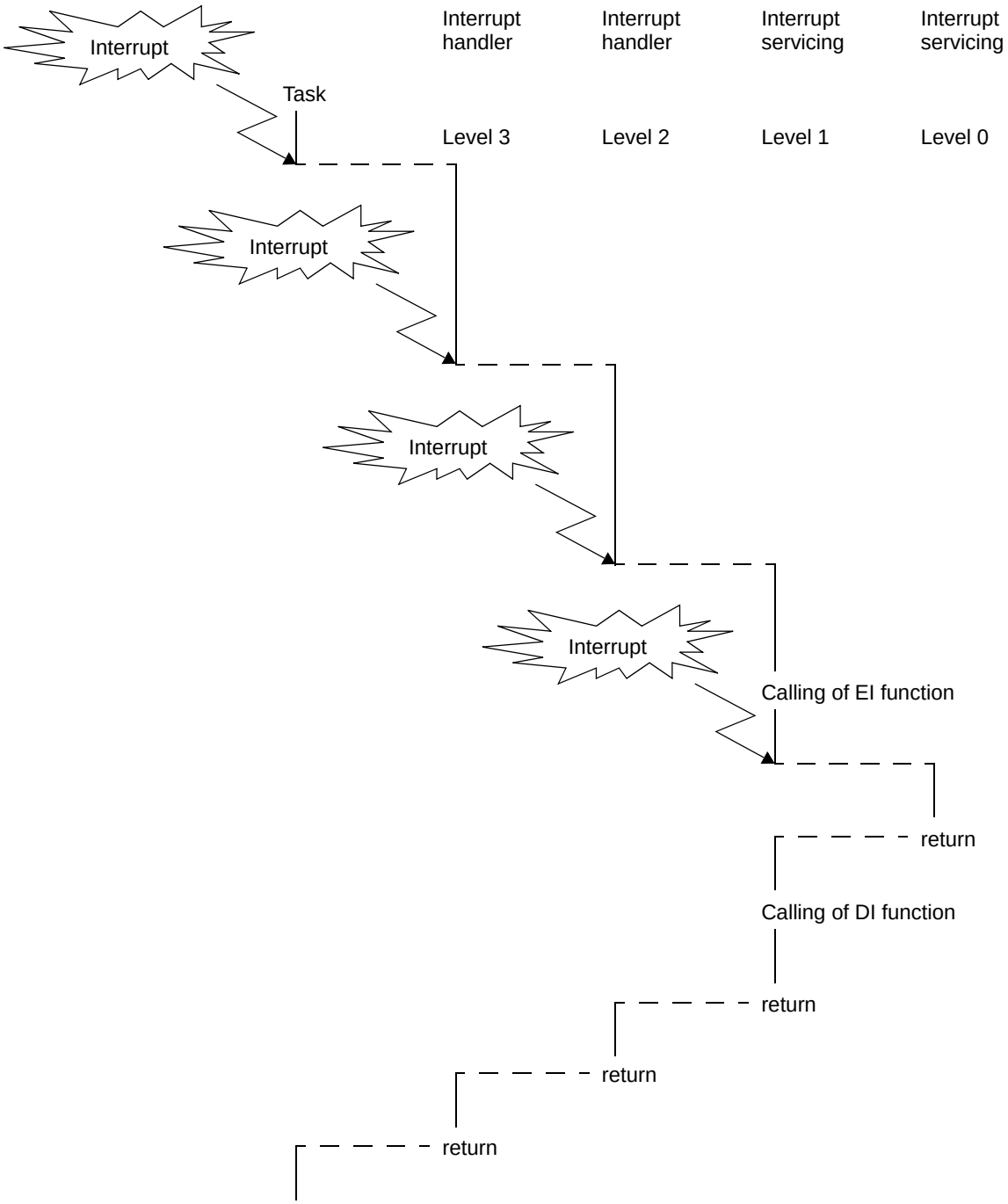
Process to Start		IE	ISP1	ISP0	Interrupt Enabled/Disabled on Start
Initialization routine		0	1	1	Interrupts disabled (behavior is not guaranteed when it is enabled by the process)
Idle routine		1	1	1	Interrupts enabled; all interrupt levels accepted
Task	When interrupts specified as enabled	1	1	1	Interrupts enabled; all interrupt levels accepted
	When interrupts specified as disabled	0	1	1	Interrupts disabled (if enabled, all interrupt levels accepted)
Cyclic handler	When a level-2 interrupt occurs	1	0	1	Interrupts enabled; level-0 and level-1 levels accepted
	When a level-3 interrupt occurs	1	1	0	Interrupts enabled; level-0, level-1, and level-2 levels accepted
Interrupt handler	When a level-2 interrupt occurs	1	0	1	Interrupts enabled; level-0 and level-1 levels accepted
	When a level-3 interrupt occurs	1	1	0	Interrupts enabled; level-0, level-1, and level-2 levels accepted
Interrupt servicing	When a level-0 interrupt occurs	0	0	0	Interrupts disabled (if enabled, a lelvel-0 interrupt accepted)
	When a level-1 interrupt occurs	0	0	0	Interrupts disabled (if enabled, a lelvel-0 interrupt accepted)
	When a level-2 interrupt occurs	0	0	1	Interrupts disabled (if enabled, lelvel-0 and lebel-1 interrupts accepted)
	When a level-3 interrupt occurs	0	1	0	Interrupts disabled (if enabled, lelvel-0, level-1, and lebel-2 interrupts accepted)

Note that a separate "IE" state is maintained for each task. If a suspended task is resumed, the IE state before suspension is restored.

9.5 Multiple Interrupts

The reoccurrence of an interrupt within an interrupt handler is called "multiple interrupt".
The following shows the flow of the processing for handling multiple interrupts.

Figure 9-3 Multiple Interrupts



When control moves to an interrupt handler, then the state changes to acceptance of maskable interrupts enabled ("IE = 1"). For this reason, multiple interrupts are generally accepted from interrupt handlers. Multiple interrupts are likewise accepted from timer interrupts and cyclic handlers called from them.

When control moves to an interrupt process, then the state changes to acceptance of maskable interrupts disabled (because the RI78V4 does not mediate, the behavior is in accordance with that of the microcontroller). For this reason, multiple interrupts are generally not accepted from interrupt processes. To enable the acceptance of multiple interrupts, it is necessary to call the EI function from the interrupt process. It is not allowed to accept multiple interrupt handlers from an interrupt process, and behavior is not guaranteed if this occurs.

If a user application enables multiple interrupts, then it is necessary to set the interrupt level of the interrupt handler/ process as shown below.

Table 9-3 Settable Interrupt Level (Enabling Multiple Interrupts from User Application)

	Interrupt Handler	Interrupt Servicing
Interrupt level 0	Not available	Available
Interrupt level 1	Not available	Available
Interrupt level 2	Available	Not available
Interrupt level 3	Available	Not available

If a user application disables multiple interrupts, then it is necessary to set the interrupt level of the interrupt handler/ process to one of the patterns shown below.

Pattern 1: Set the level of all interrupt handlers and interrupt processes to 2.
Pattern 2: Set the level of all interrupt handlers and interrupt processes to 3.
Pattern 3: Set the level of all interrupt handlers and to 2, and the level of all interrupt processes to either 2 or 3. Interrupts are disabled during an interrupt process with an interrupt level of 3 (IE = 0).

Table 9-4 Settable Interrupt Level (Disabling Multiple Interrupts from User Application)

	Pattern 1		Pattern 2		Pattern 3	
	Interrupt Handler	Interrupt Servicing	Interrupt Handler	Interrupt Servicing	Interrupt Handler	Interrupt Servicing
Interrupt level 0	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
Interrupt level 1	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
Interrupt level 2	Available	Available	Not available	Not available	Available	Available
Interrupt level 3	Not available	Not available	Available	Available	Not available	Available (*)

(*) Interrupts are disabled during this interrupt process (IE = 0).

CHAPTER 10 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

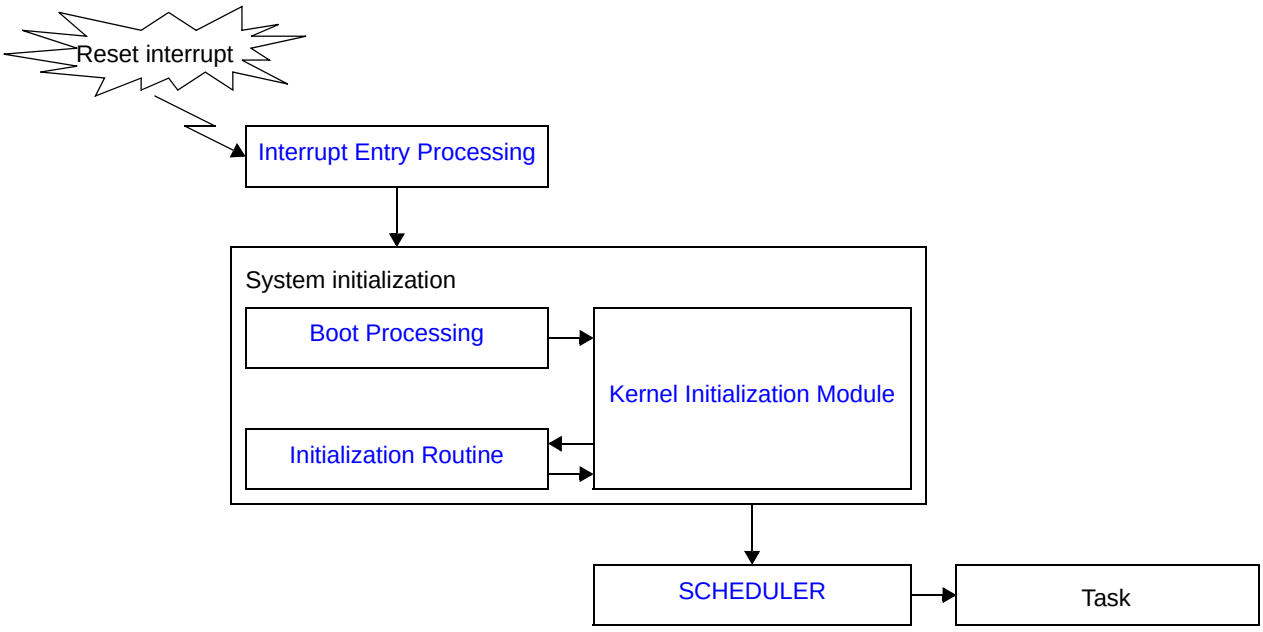
This chapter describes the system configuration management functions performed by the RI78V4.

10.1 Outline

The system configuration management functions of the RI78V4 provides system initialization processing, which is required from the reset interrupt output until control is passed to the task, and version information referencing processing.

The following shows a processing flow from when a reset interrupt occurs until the control is passed to the task.

Figure 10-1 Processing Flow (System Initialization)



10.2 Boot Processing

Boot processing is a routine dedicated to initialization processing that is extracted as a user-own coding module to initialize the minimum required hardware for the RI78V4 to perform processing. Boot processing is called from Interrupt Entry Processing that is assigned to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes the control when a reset interrupt occurs.

10.2.1 Define boot processing

Boot processing registration is realized by coding Interrupt Entry Processing (branch instruction to boot processing) to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes control upon occurrence of a reset interrupt.

The code of Interrupt Entry Processing varies depending on whether boot processing is allocated to the near area or to the far area.

The following shows examples for coding Interrupt Entry Processing.

[When boot processing is allocated to the near area]

```
RESET   CSEG    AT      0000h   ;Vector table address setting
    DW      _boot               ;Jump to boot processing _boot
```

[When boot processing is allocated to the far area]

```
    EXTRN   intent_RESET        ;Declares symbol external reference

RESET   CSEG    AT      0000h   ;Vector table address setting
    DW      intent_RESET

intent  CSEG    UNITP
intent_RESET:
    BR      !!_boot             ;Jump to boot processing _boot
```

10.2.2 Basic form of boot processing

Write Boot processing as a function that does not include arguments and return values (function name: any name).
The following shows the basic form of boot processing.

```
        PUBLIC  _boot
        EXTRN   __@STBEG, _hdwinit, __urx_start
@@LCODE CSEG    BASE
_boot:
        SEL     RB0                 ;Sets register bank

        MOVW    SP, #LOWW_@STBEG    ;Sets stack pointer SP

        CALL    !!_hdwinit          ;Initializes internal units and peripheral
                                    ;controllers

        MOV     B, #0FEDFH-0FE20H+1 ;Clears saddr area
        CLRW    AX
LSADR1:
        DEC     B
        DEC     B
        MOVW    0FE20H[B], AX
        BNZ     $LSADR1

        MOV     ES, #0FH            ;Clears RAM area
        MOVW    BC, #0FE20H-0D700H
```

```
        CLRW    AX
LSADR2:
        DECW    BC
        DECW    BC
        MOVW    0D700H[BC], AX
        CMPW    AX, BC
        BNZ     $LSADR2

        BR      !!__urx_start       ;Jump to Kernel Initialization Module
        END
```

10.2.3 Internal processing of boot processing

Boot processing is a routine dedicated to initialization processing called from Interrupt Entry Processing without using the RI78V4. Therefore, note the following points when coding boot processing.

- Coding method
  Code boot processing in assembly language.

- Stack switching
  Setting of stack pointer SP is not executed at the point when control is passed to boot processing.
  To use a boot processing dedicated stack, setting of stack pointer SP must therefore be coded at the beginning of the boot processing.

- Interrupt status
  The Kernel Initialization Module is not executed at the point when control is passed to boot processing. The system may therefore hang up when an interrupt is created before the processing is completed. To avoid this, explicitly prohibit acknowledgment of maskable interrupts by manipulating interrupt enable flag IE of program status word PSW during boot processing.

- Register bank setting
  The RI78V4 prohibits switching of a register bank that was set before __urx_start is called in boot processing to another register bank (except for the case when interrupt servicing not managed by the RI78V4).

- Service call issuance
  The RI78V4 prohibits issuance of service calls in boot processing.

The following lists processing that should be executed in boot processing.

- Setting of stack pointer SP
- Setting of interrupt enable flag IE
- Initialization of internal units and peripheral controllers
- Initialization of RAM area (initialization of memory area without initial value, copying of initialization data)
- Passing of control to Kernel Initialization Module (function name: _urx_start)

Note Setting of stack pointer SP is required only when a stack dedicated to boot processing is used in boot processing.

10.3 Initialization Routine

The initialization routine is a routine dedicated to initialization processing that is extracted as a user-own coding module to initialize the hardware dependent on the user execution environment (such as the peripheral controller), and is called from the Kernel Initialization Module.

10.3.1 Define initialization routine

In the RI78V4, the method of registering an initialization routine is limited to "static registration by the Kernel Initialization Module".

Initialization routines therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static define
  Static initialization routine registration is realized by coding initialization routines by using the prescribed function name init_handler.
  The RI78V4 executes initialization routine registration processing based on relevant symbol information, using the Kernel Initialization Module, and handles the registered initialization routines as management targets.

10.3.2 Undefine initialization routine

In the RI78V4, initialization routines registered statically by the Kernel Initialization Module cannot be unregistered dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

10.3.3 Basic form of initialization routine

Write initialization routines using void type functions that do not have arguments (function: init_handler).
The following shows the basic form of initialization routine.

[C Language]

```
#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
init_handler ( void )
{
    /* ............ */          /*Main processing*/

    return;                     /*Terminate initialization routine*/
}
```

[Assembly Language]

```
$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)        ;Standard header file definition
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)     ;System information header file definition

    PUBLIC  _init_handler
    CSEG
_init_handler:
    ; ............             ;Main processing

    RET                         ;Terminate initialization routine
    END
```

10.3.4 Internal processing of initialization routine

Moreover, the RI78V4 executes "original pre-processing" when passing control to the initialization routine, as well as "original post-processing" when regaining control from the initialization routine.

Therefore, note the following points when coding initialization routines.

- Coding method
  Code initialization routines using C or assembly language in the format shown in "10.3.3 Basic form of initialization routine".

- Stack switching
  The RI78V4 executes processing to switch to the system stack when passing control to the initialization routine, and processing to switch to the stack for the Kernel Initialization Module when regaining control from the initialization routine.
  The user is therefore not required to code processing related to stack switching in initialization routines.

- Interrupt status
  Maskable interrupt acknowledgement is prohibited in the RI78V4 when control is passed to the initialization routine.
  Kernel Initialization Module is not completed at the point when control is passed to the initialization routine. The system may therefore hang up when acknowledgment of maskable interrupts is explicitly enabled within the initialization routine. Therefore, enabling maskable interrupt acknowledgment in the initialization routine is prohibited in the RI78V4.

- Service call issuance
  The RI78V4 prohibits issuance of service calls in initialization routines.

The following lists processing that should be executed in initialization routines.

- Initialization of internal units and peripheral controllers
- Initialization of RAM area (initialization of memory area without initial value, copying of initialization data)
- Returning of control to Kernel Initialization Module

10.4 Kernel Initialization Module

The kernel initialization module is a dedicated initialization processing routine provided for initializing the minimum required software for the RI78V4 to perform processing, and is called from Boot Processing.

The following processing is executed in the kernel initialization module.

- Securement of memory area
- Creating and registering management objects
- Calling of initialization routine
- Passing of control to scheduler

Note The kernel initialization module is part of the functions provided by the RI78V4. The user therefore need not code the processing contents of the kernel initialization module.

10.5 Reference Version Information

Version information is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- ref_ver
  The service call stores version information packet (such as kernel maker's code) to the area specified by parameter *pk_rver*.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    T_RVER  pk_rver;            /*Declares data structure*/
    UH      maker;              /*Declares variable*/
    UH      prid;               /*Declares variable*/
    UH      spver;              /*Declares variable*/
    UH      prver;              /*Declares variable*/
    UH      prno[4];            /*Declares variable*/

    /* ............ */

    ref_ver ( &pk_rver );       /*Reference version information*/

    maker = pk_rver.maker;      /*Reference Kernel maker's code*/
    prid = pk_rver.prid;        /*Reference identification number of the kernel*/
    spver = pk_rver.spver;      /*Reference version number of the ITRON
                                  Specification*/
    prver = pk_rver.prver;      /*Reference version number of the kernel*/
    prno[0] = pk_rver.prno[0];  /*Reference management information of the kernel
                                  product (version type)*/
    prno[1] = pk_rver.prno[1];  /*Reference management information of the kernel
                                  product (memory model)*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note For details about the version information packet, refer to "12.5.8 Version information packet".

CHAPTER 11 SCHEDULER

This chapter describes the scheduler of the RI78V4.

11.1 Outline

The scheduling functions provided by the RI78V4 consist of functions manage/decide the order in which tasks are executed by monitoring the transition states of dynamically changing tasks, so that the CPU use right is given to the optimum task.

11.2 Driving Method

The RI78V4 employs the Event-driven system in which the scheduler is activated when an event (trigger) occurs.

- Event-driven system

  Under the event-driven system of the RI78V4, the scheduler is activated upon occurrence of the events listed below and dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is executed.

  - Issuance of service call that may cause task state transition
  - Issuance of instruction for returning from non-task (cyclic handler, interrupt handler, etc.)
  - Occurrence of clock interrupt used when achieving TIME MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

11.3 Scheduling System

As task scheduling methods, the RI78V4 employs the Priority level method, which uses the priority level defined for each task, and the FCFS method, which uses the time elapsed from the point when a task becomes subject to the RI78V4 scheduling.

- Priority level method

  A task with the highest priority level is selected from among all the tasks that have entered an executable state (RUNNING state or READY state), and given the CPU use right.

  Note In the RI78V4, a task having a smaller priority number is given a higher priority.

- FCFS method

  The same priority level can be defined for multiple tasks in the RI78V4. Therefore, multiple tasks with the highest priority level, which is used as the criterion for task selection under the Priority level method, may exist simultaneously.
  To remedy this, dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is executed on a first come first served (FCFS) basis, and the task for which the longest interval of time has elapsed since it entered an executable state (READY state) is selected as the task to which the CPU use right is granted.

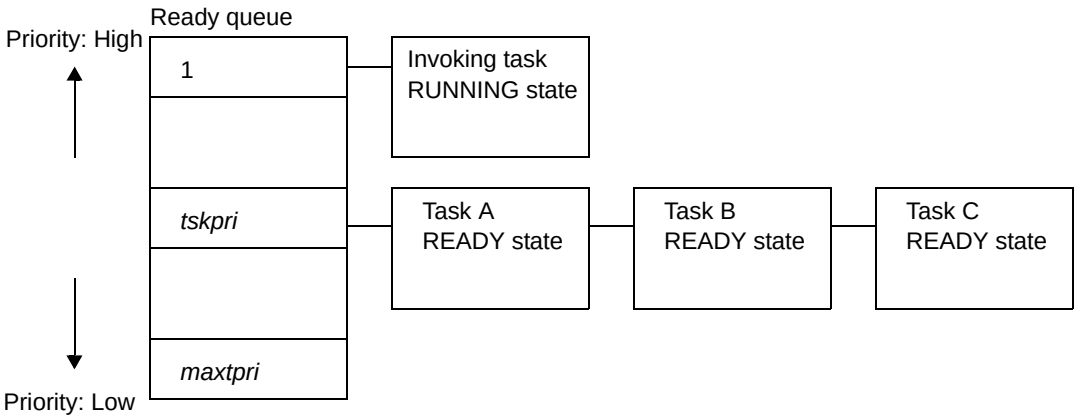
11.4 Ready Queue

The RI78V4 uses a "ready queue" to implement task scheduling.

The ready queue is a hash table that uses priority as the key, and tasks that have entered an executable state (READY state or RUNNING state) are queued in FIFO order. Therefore, the scheduler realizes the RI78V4's scheduling method (priority level or FCFS) by executing task detection processing from the highest priority level of the ready queue upon activation, and upon detection of queued tasks, giving the CPU use right to the first task of the proper priority level.

The following shows the case where multiple tasks are queued to a ready queue.

Figure 11-1 Implementation of Scheduling Method (Priority Level Method or FCFS Method)



11.4.1 Create ready queue

In the RI78V4, the method of creating a ready queue is limited to "static creation by the Kernel Initialization Module".

Ready queues therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create
  Static ready queue creation is realized by defining Task priority information in the system configuration file.
  The RI78V4 executes ready queue creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the Kernel Initialization Module, and handles the created ready queues as management targets.

11.4.2 Delete ready queue

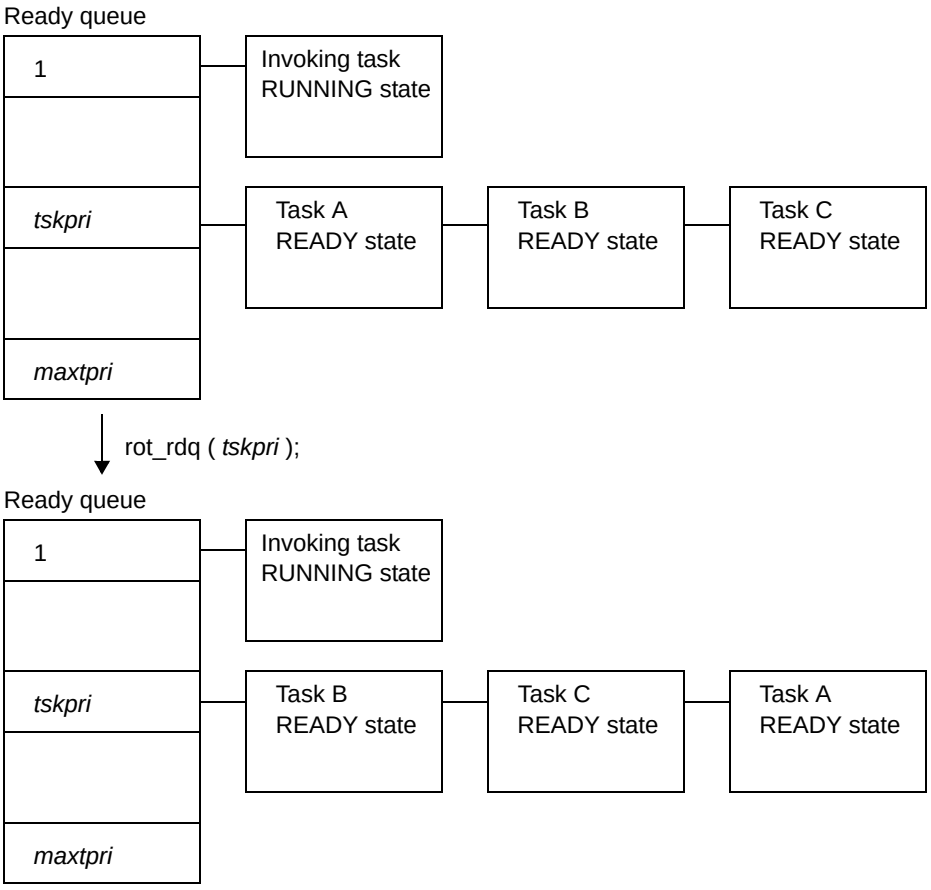
In the RI78V4, ready queues created statically by the Kernel Initialization Module cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

11.4.3 Rotate task precedence

The RI78V4 provides a function to change the queuing order of tasks from the processing program, explicitly switching the task execution order.

The following shows the status transition when the task queuing order is changed.

Figure 11-2 Rotate Task Precedence



A ready queue is rotated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- rot_rdq, irot_rdq
  These service calls re-queue the first task of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri* to the end of the queue to change the task execution order explicitly.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_cychdr ( void )
{
    PRI     tskpri = 8;         /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    irot_rdq ( tskpri );        /*Rotate task precedence*/

    /* ............ */

    return;                     /*Terminate cyclic handler*/
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of rotation requests. If no task is queued to the ready queue corresponding to the relevant priority, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

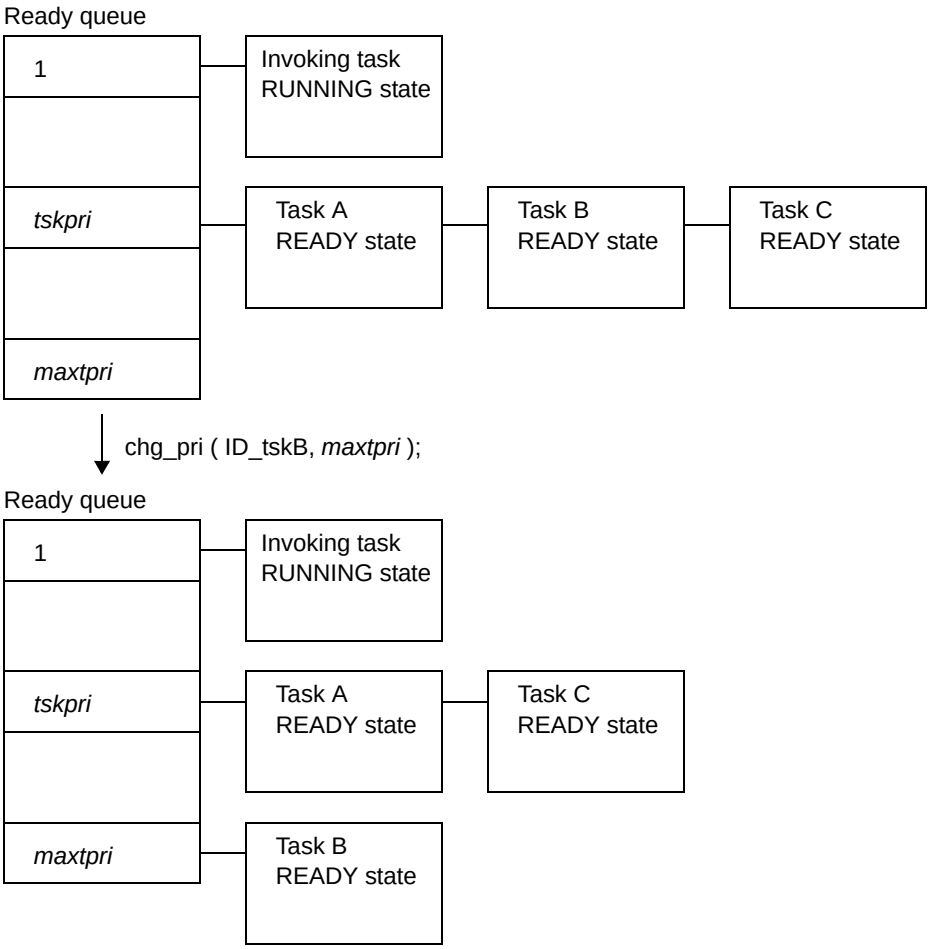
Note 2 Round-robin scheduling can be implemented by issuing this service call via a cyclic handler in a constant cycle.

11.4.4 Change task priority

The RI78V4 provides a function to change the priority level of tasks from the processing program, explicitly switching the task execution order.

The following shows the status transition when this task priority is changed.

Figure 11-3 Change Task Priority



A priority is changed by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- chg_pri, ichg_pri
  This service call changes the priority of the task specified by parameter *tskid* (current priority) to a value specified by parameter *tskpri*.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    PRI     tskpri = 9;         /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ............ */

    chg_pri ( tskid, tskpri );  /*Change task priority*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

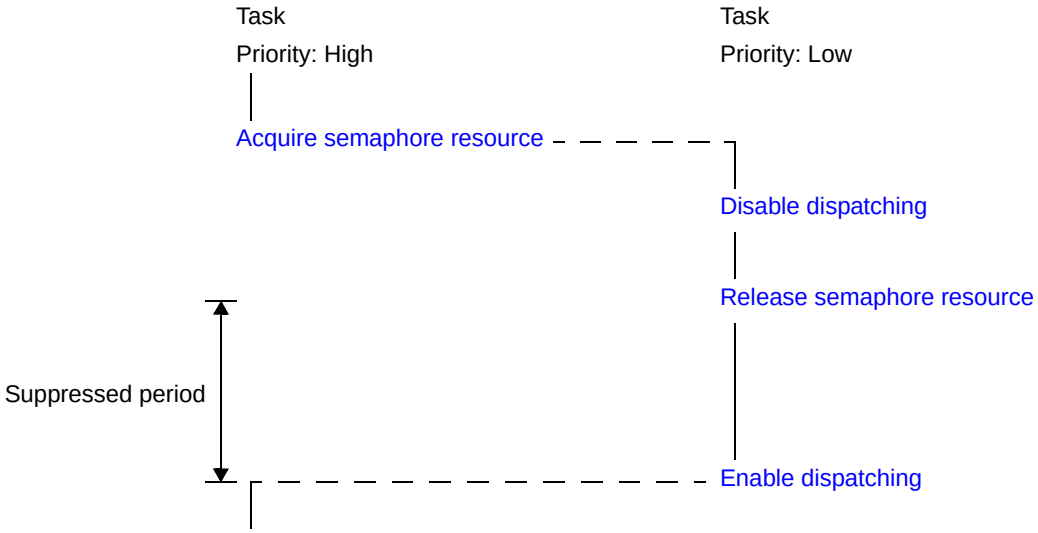
Note If the target task is in the RUNNING or READY state after this service call is issued, this service call re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri*, following priority change processing.

11.5 Scheduling Disabling

The RI78V4 provides a function to disable scheduler activation by referencing the system state from the processing program and explicitly prohibiting dispatch processing (task scheduling processing).

The following shows a processing flow when using the scheduling suppressing function.

Figure 11-4 Scheduling Suppression Function



11.5.1 Disable dispatching

A task is moved to the dispatching disabled state by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- dis_dsp
  This service call changes the system status to the dispatching disabled state.
  As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) is disabled from when this service call is issued until ena_dsp is issued.
  If a service call (chg_pri, sig_sem, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when this service call is issued until ena_dsp is issued, the RI78V4 executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until ena_dsp is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ............ */

    dis_dsp ( );                /*Disable dispatching*/

    /* ............ */          /*Dispatching disabled state*/

    ena_dsp ( );                /*Enable dispatching*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of disable requests. If the system is in the dispatching disabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 The dispatching disabled state changed by issuing this service call must be cancelled before the task that issued this service call moves to the DORMANT state.

11.5.2 Enable dispatching

The dispatching disabled state is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- ena_dsp
  This service call changes the system status to the dispatching enabled state.
  As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) that has been disabled by issuing dis_dsp is enabled.
  If a service call (chg_pri, sig_sem, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when dis_dsp is issued until this service call is issued, the RI78V4 executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until this service call is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.
  The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma     rtos_task   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ............ */

    dis_dsp ( );                /*Disable dispatching*/

    /* ............ */          /*Dispatching disabled state*/

    ena_dsp ( );                /*Enable dispatching*/

    /* ............ */
}
```

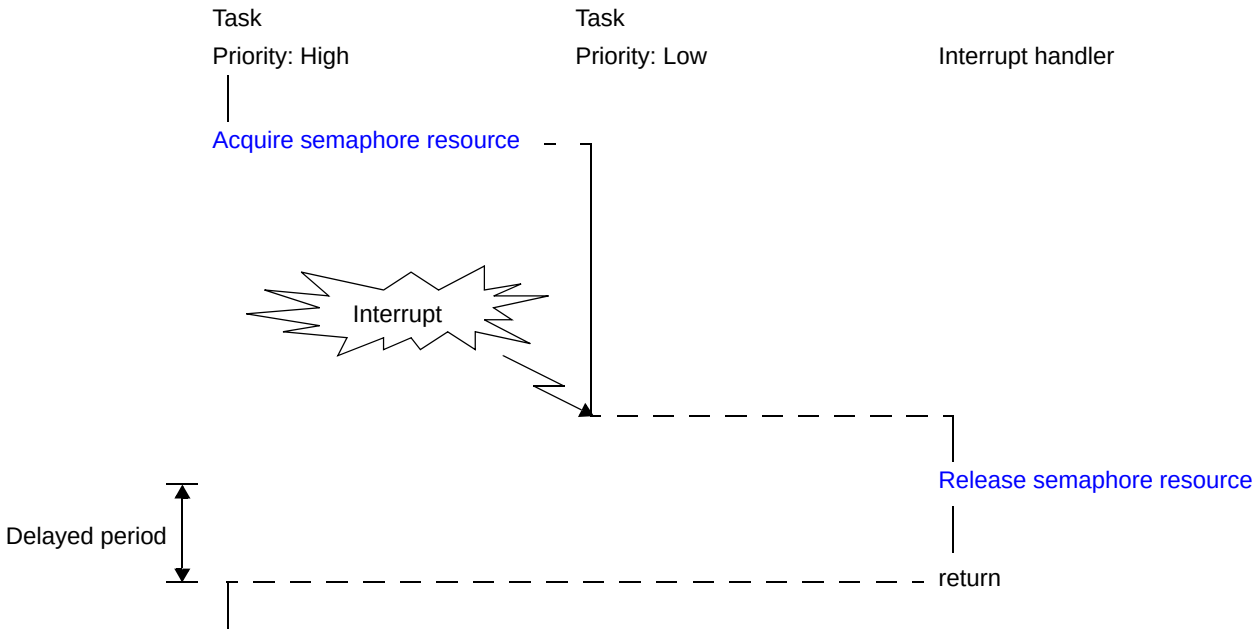
Note This service call does not queue enable requests. If the system is in the dispatching enabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

11.6 Delay of Scheduling

If a service call (ichg_pri, isig_sem, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is issued in order to quickly complete the processing in a non-task (cyclic handler, interrupt handler, etc.) during the interval until the processing in the non-task ends, the RI78V4 executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until a return instruction is issued by the non-task, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

The following shows a processing flow when a service call that involves dispatch processing in a non-task is issued.

Figure 11-5 Delay of Scheduling



11.7 Idle Routine

The idle routine is a routine dedicated to idle processing that is extracted as a user-own coding module to utilize the standby function provided by the CPU (to achieve the low-power consumption system), and is called from the scheduler when there no longer remains a task subject to scheduling by the RI78V4 (task in the RUNNING or READY state) in the system.

11.7.1 Define idle routine

In the RI78V4, the method of registering an idle routine is limited to "static registration by the Kernel Initialization Module".

Idle routines therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static define
  Static idle routine registration is realized by coding idle routines by using the prescribed function name idle_handler.
  The RI78V4 executes idle routine registration processing based on relevant symbol information, using the Kernel Initialization Module, and handles the registered idle routines as management targets.

11.7.2 Undefine idle routine

In the RI78V4, idle routines registered statically by the Kernel Initialization Module cannot be unregistered dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

11.7.3 Basic form of idle routine

Write idle routines using void type functions that do not have arguments (function: idle_handler).
The following shows the basic form of idle routine.

[C Language]

```
#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
idle_handler ( void )
{
    /* ............ */          /*Main processing*/

    return;                     /*Terminate idle routine*/
}
```

[Assembly Language]

```
$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)        ;Standard header file definition
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)     ;System information header file definition

    PUBLIC  _idle_handler
    CSEG
_idle_handler:
    ; ............             ;Main processing

    RET                         ;Terminate idle routine
    END
```

11.7.4 Internal processing of idle routine

The RI78V4 handles the idle routine as a "non-task (module independent from tasks)".

Moreover, the RI78V4 executes "original pre-processing" when passing control to the idle routine, as well as "original post-processing" when regaining control from the idle routine.

Therefore, note the following points when coding idle routines.

- Coding method
  Code idle routines using C or assembly language in the format shown in "11.7.3 Basic form of idle routine".

- Stack switching
  The RI78V4 executes processing to switch to the system stack when passing control to the idle routine, and processing to switch to the stack for the switch destination processing program (system stack or task stack) when regaining control from the idle routine.
  The user is therefore not required to code processing related to stack switching in idle routines.

- Interrupt status
  Maskable interrupt acknowledgement is prohibited in the RI78V4 when control is passed to the idle routine.
  The user is therefore not required to write the code related to maskable interrupt acknowledgment in idle routines.

- Service call issuance
  The RI78V4 prohibits issuance of service calls in idle routines.

The following lists processing that should be executed in idle routines.

- Effective use of standby function provided by the CPU

CHAPTER 12 SERVICE CALLS

This chapter describes the service calls supported by the RI78V4.

12.1 Outline

The service calls provided by the RI78V4 are service routines provided for indirectly manipulating the resources (tasks, semaphores, etc.) managed by the RI78V4 from a processing program. The service calls provided by the RI78V4 are listed below by management module.

- Task Management Functions

  act_tsk, iact_tsk, can_act, sta_tsk, ista_tsk, ext_tsk, ter_tsk, chg_pri, ichg_pri, ref_tsk

- Task Dependent Synchronization Functions

  slp_tsk, tslp_tsk, wup_tsk, iwup_tsk, can_wup, ican_wup, rel_wai, irel_wai, sus_tsk, isus_tsk, rsm_tsk, irsm_tsk, frsm_tsk, ifrsm_tsk, dly_tsk

- Synchronization and Communication Functions (Semaphores)

  sig_sem, isig_sem, wai_sem, pol_sem, twai_sem, ref_sem

- Synchronization and Communication Functions (Eventflags)

  set_flg, iset_flg, clr_flg, wai_flg, pol_flg, twai_flg, ref_flg

- Synchronization and Communication Functions (Mailboxes)

  snd_mbx, rcv_mbx, prcv_mbx, trcv_mbx, ref_mbx

- Memory Pool Management Functions

  get_mpf, pget_mpf, tget_mpf, rel_mpf, ref_mpf

- Time Management Functions

  sta_cyc, stp_cyc, ref_cyc

- System State Management Functions

  rot_rdq, irot_rdq, get_tid, iget_tid, loc_cpu, iloc_cpu, unl_cpu, iunl_cpu, ena_dsp, dis_dsp, sns_ctx, sns_loc, sns_dsp, sns_dpn

- System Configuration Management Functions

  ref_ver

12.2 Call Service Call

The method for calling service calls from processing programs coded either in C or assembly language is described below.

12.2.1 C language

By calling using the same method as for normal C functions, service call parameters are handed over to the RI78V4 as arguments and the relevant processing is executed.

[C Language]

```
#pragma     rtos_func   func_task

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    ercd = act_tsk ( tskid );   /*Call service call*/

    /* ............ */

    ext_tsk ( );                /*Call service call*/
}
```

Note To call the service calls provided by the RI78V4 from a processing program, the header files listed below must be coded (include processing).

kernel.h: Standard header file (for C language)
kernel_id.h: System information header file (for C language)

12.2.2 Assembly language

By calling with the CALL instruction after performing the parameter settings according to the assembler's function calling rules, the service call parameters are handed over to the RI78V4 and the relevant processing is executed.

[Assembly Language]

```
$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)        ;standard header file definition
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)     ;System information header file definition

        DESG
_ercd:  DS      (2)             ;Secures area for storing return value

        PUBLIC  _func_task
        CSEG
_func_task:
        PUSH    BC      ;Stores the higher 2 bytes of argument exinf into stack
        PUSH    AX      ;Stores the lower 2 bytes of argument exinf into stack

        MOVW    AX, #ID_tskA    ;Parameter setting
        CALL    !!_act_tsk      ;Call service call
        MOVW    AX, BC
        MOVW    !_ercd, AX      ;Return value setting

    ; ............

    BR      !!_ext_tsk          ;Call service call
    END
```

Note To call the service calls provided by the RI78V4 from a processing program, the header files listed below must be coded (include processing).

kernel.inc: Standard header file (for assembly language)
kernel_id.inc: System information header file (for assembly language)

12.3 Amount of Stack Used by Service Calls

The RI78V4 saves/restores the values of registers PC, PSW and HL to/from the stack of the processing program that issued the relevant service call (task stack or system stack) during preprocessing/postprocessing of the service call.

The stack of the processing program that issued a service call is used for storing the service call arguments, and the system stack is used as the stack area required for executing internal processing of the service call.

When securing the task stack and system stack areas, the stack amount consumed upon issuance of a service call must therefore be considered.

The following lists the stack sizes required upon issuance of a service call.

Table 12-1 Stack Amount Used by Service Call (Unit: Bytes)

Service Call	For Service Call Arguments	For Internal Processing by Program Issued the Service Call	For System Stack Internal Processing
Task Management Functions			
act_tsk, iact_tsk	0	10	4
can_act	0	10	4
sta_tsk, ista_tsk	0	8	4
ext_tsk	0	8	4
ter_tsk	0	8	4
chg_pri, ichg_pri	2	8	4
ref_tsk	4	8	4
Task Dependent Synchronization Functions			
slp_tsk	0	8	4
tslp_tsk	0	8	4
wup_tsk, iwup_tsk	0	8	4
can_wup, ican_wup	0	8	4
rel_wai, irel_wai	0	8	4
sus_tsk, isus_tsk	0	8	4
rsm_tsk, irsm_tsk	0	8	4
frsm_tsk, ifrsm_tsk	0	8	4
dly_tsk	0	8	4
Synchronization and Communication Functions (Semaphores)			
sig_sem, isig_sem	0	8	4
wai_sem	0	8	4
pol_sem	0	8	4
twai_sem	4	8	4
ref_sem	4	8	4
Synchronization and Communication Functions (Eventflags)			
set_flg, iset_flg	2	8	4
clr_flg	2	8	4
wai_flg	8	8	6
pol_flg	8	8	6
twai_flg	12	8	6

Service Call	For Service Call Arguments	For Internal Processing by Program Issued the Service Call	For System Stack Internal Processing
ref_flg	4	8	4
Synchronization and Communication Functions (Mailboxes)			
snd_mbx	4	8	4
rcv_mbx	4	8	6
prcv_mbx	4	8	6
trcv_mbx	8	8	6
ref_mbx	4	8	4
Memory Pool Management Functions			
get_mpf	4	8	6
pget_mpf	4	8	6
tget_mpf	8	8	6
rel_mpf	4	8	6
ref_mpf	4	8	4
Time Management Functions			
sta_cyc	0	8	4
stp_cyc	0	8	4
ref_cyc	4	8	4
System State Management Functions			
rot_rdq, irot_rdq	0	8	4
get_tid, iget_tid	0	8	4
loc_cpu, iloc_cpu	0	8	4
unl_cpu, iunl_cpu	0	8	4
ena_dsp	0	8	4
dis_dsp	0	8	4
sns_ctx	0	8	4
sns_loc	0	8	4
sns_dsp	0	8	4
sns_dpn	0	8	4
System Configuration Management Functions			
ref_ver	0	8	4

12.4 Data Macros

This section explains the data macros (for data types, current state, or the like) used when issuing a service call provided by the RI78V4.

12.4.1 Data types

The following lists the data types of parameters specified when issuing a service call.

Macro definition of the data type is performed by header file <ri_root>\include\os\types.h, which is called from standard header file <ri_root>\include\kernel.h.

Table 12-2 Data Types

Macro	Data Type	Description
UH	unsigned short int	Unsigned 16-bit integer
*VP	void __far	Pointer to an unknown data type
UINT	unsigned int	Unsigned 16-bit integer
VP_INT	signed long int	Pointer to an unknown data type, or a signed 32-bit integer
ID Note	unsigned char	Object ID number
BOOL	signed int	Boolean value
STAT	unsigned short int	Object state
ER	signed short int	Return value
ER_UINT	unsigned short int	Unsigned 16-bit integer
PRI	signed char	Priority
FLGPTN	unsigned short int	Bit pattern
MODE	unsigned char	Service call operational mode
TMO	signed long int	Timeout (unit: ticks)
RELTIM	unsigned long int	Relative time (unit: ticks)

Note The ID type definition in the RI78V4 differs from that of the uITRON 4.0 specification.

12.4.2 Current state

The following lists the status at the point acquired by issuing a service call (ref_tsk, ref_cyc).
Macro definition of the current status is performed by standard header file <ri_root>\include\kernel.h.

Table 12-3 Current State

Macro	Value	Description
TTS_RUN	0x01	RUNNING state
TTS_RDY	0x02	READY state
TTS_WAI	0x04	WAITING state
TTS_SUS	0x08	SUSPENDED state
TTS_WAS	0x0c	WAITING-SUSPENDED state
TTS_DMT	0x10	DORMANT state
TCYC_STP	0x00	Non-operational state
TCYC_STA	0x01	Operational state

12.4.3 WAITING types

The following lists WAITING types acquired by issuing a service call (ref_tsk).
Macro definition of the WAITING type is performed by standard header file <ri_root>\include\kernel.h.

Table 12-4 WAITING Types

Macro	Value	Description
TTW_SLP	0x0001	A task enters this state if the counter for the task (registering the number of times the wakeup request has been issued) indicates 0x0 upon the issuance of a slp_tsk or tslp_tsk.
TTW_DLY	0x0002	A task enters this state upon the issuance of a dly_tsk.
TTW_SEM	0x0004	A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a resource from the relevant semaphore upon the issuance of a wai_sem or twai_sem.
TTW_FLG	0x0008	A task enters this state if a relevant eventflag does not satisfy a predetermined condition upon the issuance of a wai_flg or twai_flg.
TTW_MBX	0x0040	A task enters this state if cannot receive a message from the relevant mailbox upon the issuance of a rcv_mbx or trcv_mbx.
TTW_MPF	0x2000	A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a fixed-sized memory block from the relevant fixed-sized memory pool upon the issuance of a get_mpf or tget_mpf.

12.4.4 Return value

The following lists the values returned from service calls.
Macro definition of the return value is performed by standard header file <ri_root>\include\kernel.h.

Table 12-5 Return Value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_ILUSE	-28	Illegal service call use.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error.
E_QOVR	-43	Queue overflow.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.
FALSE	0	False
TRUE	1	True

12.4.5 Conditional compile macro

The RI78V4 header files are conditionally compiled by the following macro.

Table 12-6 Conditional Compile Macro

Classification	Macro	Description
C compiler package	__REL__	The CA78K0R is used.

12.4.6 Others

The following lists other macros used when issuing a service call.
Macro definition of other macros is performed by standard header file <ri_root>\include\kernel.h.

Table 12-7 Others

Macro	Value	Description
TSK_SELF	0	Invoking task
TPRI_INI	0	Initial priority of the task
TMO_FEVR	-1	Waiting forever
TMO_POL	0	Polling
TWF_ANDW	0x00	AND waiting condition
TWF_ORW	0x01	OR waiting condition
TPRI_SELF	0	Current priority of the invoking task
TSK_NONE	0	No applicable task
NULL	0	No applicable message

12.5 Packet Formats

This section explains the data structures (task state packet, semaphore state packet, or the like) used when issuing a service call provided by the RI78V4.

12.5.1 Task state packet

The following shows task state packet T_RTSK used when issuing ref_tsk.

Definition of task state packet T_RTSK is performed by header file <ri_root>\include\os\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <ri_root>\include\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct  t_rtsk {
    STAT    tskstat;        /*Task current state*/
    PRI     tskpri;         /*Task current priority*/
    PRI     tskbpri;        /*Reserved for future use*/
    STAT    tskwait;        /*Reason for waiting*/
    ID      wobjid;         /*Object ID number for which the task is waiting*/
    TMO     lefttmo;        /*Reserved for future use*/
    UINT    actcnt;         /*Activation request count*/
    UINT    wupcnt;         /*Wakeup request count*/
    UINT    suscnt;         /*Suspension count*/
} T_RTSK;
```

[packet.inc]

```
rtsk_tskstat    EQU   00h   ;Task current state
rtsk_tskpri     EQU   02h   ;Task current priority
rtsk_tskbpri    EQU   03h   ;Reserved for future use
rtsk_tskwait    EQU   04h   ;Reason for waiting
rtsk_wobjid     EQU   06h   ;Object ID number for which the task is waiting
rtsk_lefttmo    EQU   08h   ;Reserved for future use
rtsk_actcnt     EQU   0ch   ;Activation request count
rtsk_wupcnt     EQU   0eh   ;Wakeup request count
rtsk_suscnt     EQU   10h   ;Suspension count
```

The following shows details on task state packet T_RTSK.

- tskstat, rtsk_tskstat
  Stores the current state of the task.

  TTS_RUN: RUNNING state
  TTS_RDY: READY state
  TTS_WAI: WAITING state
  TTS_SUS: SUSPENDED state
  TTS_WAS: WAITING-SUSPENDED state
  TTS_DMT: DORMANT state

- tskpri, rtsk_tskpri
  Stores the current priority of the task.

- tskbpri, rtsk_tskbpri
  System-reserved area.

- tskwait, rtsk_tskwait
  Stores the reason for waiting.

  TTW_NONE: Has not moved to the WAITING state.

TTW_SLP: A task enters this state if the counter for the task (registering the number of times the wakeup request has been issued) indicates 0x0 upon the issuance of a slp_tsk or tslp_tsk.
TTW_DLY: A task enters this state upon the issuance of a dly_tsk.
TTW_SEM: A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a resource from the relevant semaphore upon the issuance of a wai_sem or twai_sem.
TTW_FLG: A task enters this state if a relevant eventflag does not satisfy a predetermined condition upon the issuance of a wai_flg or twai_flg.
TTW_MBX: A task enters this state if cannot receive a message from the relevant mailbox upon the issuance of a rcv_mbx or trcv_mbx.
TTW_MPF: A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a fixed-sized memory block from the relevant fixed-sized memory pool upon the issuance of a get_mpf or tget_mpf.

- wobjid, rtsk_wobjid
  Stores the object ID number for which the task is waiting.

- lefttmo, rtsk_lefttmo
  System-reserved area.

- actcnt, rtsk_actcnt
  Stores the activation request count of the task.

- wupcnt, rtsk_wupcnt
  Stores the wakeup request count of the task.

- suscnt, rtsk_suscnt
  Stores the suspention count of the task.

12.5.2 Semaphore state packet

The following shows semaphore state packet T_RSEM used when issuing ref_sem.

Definition of semaphore state packet T_RSEM is performed by header file <ri_root>\include\os\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <ri_root>\include\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct  t_rsem {
    ID      wtskid;         /*ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue*/
    UINT    semcnt;         /*Current resource count*/
} T_RSEM;
```

[packet.inc]

```
rsem_wtskid     EQU   00h   ;ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue
rsem_semcnt     EQU   02h   ;Current resource count
```

The following shows details on semaphore state packet T_RSEM.

- wtskid, rsem_wtskid
  Stores information whether a task is queued to the wait queue.

  TSK_NONE: No applicable task.
  Value: ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue

- semcnt, rsem_semcnt
  Stores the current resource count of the semaphore.

12.5.3 Eventflag state packet

The following shows eventflag state packet T_RFLG used when issuing ref_flg.

Definition of eventflag state packet T_RFLG is performed by header file <ri_root>\include\os\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <ri_root>\include\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct  t_rflg {
    ID      wtskid;         /*ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue*/
    FLGPTN  flgptn;         /*Current bit pattern*/
} T_RFLG;
```

[packet.inc]

```
rflg_wtskid     EQU   00h   ;ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue
rflg_flgptn     EQU   02h   ;Current bit pattern
```

The following shows details on eventflag state packet T_RFLG.

- wtskid, rflg_wtskid
  Stores information whether a task is queued to the wait queue.

  TSK_NONE: No applicable task.
  Value: ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue

- flgptn, rflg_flgptn
  Stores the current bit pattern of the eventflag.

12.5.4 Message packet

The following shows message packet T_MSG and T_MSG_PRI used when issuing snd_mbx, rcv_mbx, prcv_mbx, or trcv_mbx.

Definition of message packet T_MSG and T_MSG_PRI is performed by header file <ri_root>\include\types.h, which is called from standard header file <ri_root>\include\kernel.h.

[Message packet for TA_MFIFO attribute]

```
typedef struct  t_msg {
    struct  t_msg   __far   *msgque;  /*Reserved for future use*/
} T_MSG;
```

[Message packet for TA_MPRI attribute]

```
typedef struct  t_msg_pri {
    struct  t_msg   __far   *msgque;  /*Reserved for future use*/
    PRI     msgpri;                   /*Message priority*/
} T_MSG_PRI;
```

The following shows details on message packet T_MSG and T_MSG_PRI.

- msgque
  System-reserved area.

- msgpri
  Stores the priority of the message.

  Note 1 In the RI78V4, a message having a smaller priority number is given a higher priority.

  Note 2 Values that can be specified for the priority of a message are limited from 1 to 31.

12.5.5 Mailbox state packet

The following shows mailbox state packet T_RMBX used when issuing ref_mbx.

Definition of mailbox state packet T_RMBX is performed by header file <ri_root>\include\os\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <ri_root>\include\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct  t_rmbx {
    ID      wtskid;             /*ID number of the task at the head of the wait
                                  queue*/
    T_MSG   __far   *pk_msg;    /*Start address of the message packet at the head
                                  of the message queue*/
} T_RMBX;
```

[packet.inc]

```
rmbx_wtskid     EQU   00h       ;ID number of the task at the head of the wait
                                ;queue
rmbx_pk_msg     EQU   02h       ;Start address of the message packet at the head
                                ;of the message queue
```

The following shows details on mailbox state packet T_RMBX.

- wtskid, rmbx_wtskid
  Stores information whether a task is queued to the wait queue.

TSK_NONE:	No applicable task.
Value:	ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue

- pk_msg, rmbx_pk_msg
  Stores information whether a message is queued to the message queue.

NULL:	No applicable message.
Value:	Start address of the message packet at the head of the message queue

12.5.6 Fixed-sized memory pool state packet

The following shows fixed-sized memory pool state packet T_RMPF used when issuing ref_mpf.

Definition of fixed-sized memory pool state packet T_RMPF is performed by header file <ri_root>\include\os\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <ri_root>\include\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct  t_rmpf {
    ID      wtskid;         /*ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue*/
    UINT    fblkcnt;        /*Number of free memory blocks*/
} T_RMPF;
```

[packet.inc]

```
rmpf_wtskid     EQU   00h   ;ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue
rmpf_fblkcnt    EQU   02h   ;Number of free memory blocks
```

The following shows details on fixed-sized memory pool state packet T_RMPF.

- wtskid, rmpf_wtskid
  Stores information whether a task is queued to the wait queue.

  TSK_NONE: No applicable task.
  Value: ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue

- fblkcnt, rmpf_fblkcnt
  Stores the number of free memory blocks.

12.5.7 Cyclic handler state packet

The following shows cyclic handler state packet T_RCYC used when issuing ref_cyc.

Definition of cyclic handler state packet T_RCYC is performed by header file <ri_root>\include\os\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <ri_root>\include\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct  t_rcyc {
    STAT    cycstat;        /*Cyclic handler operational state*/
    RELTIM  lefttim;        /*Time left before the next activation*/
} T_RCYC;
```

[packet.inc]

```
rcyc_cycstat    EQU   00h   ;Cyclic handler operational state
rcyc_lefttim    EQU   02h   ;Time left before the next activation
```

The following shows details on cyclic handler state packet T_RCYC.

- cycstat, rcyc_cycstat
  Stores the operational state of the cyclic handler.

  TCYC_STP: Operational state
  TCYC_STA: Non-operational state

- lefttim, rcyc_lefttim
  Stores the time (unit: tick) left before the next activation.
  The contents of this member become an undefined value if the target cyclic handler is in the non-operational state (STP state).

12.5.8 Version information packet

The following shows version information packet T_RVER used when issuing ref_ver.

Definition of version information packet T_RVER is performed by header file <ri_root>\include\os\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <ri_root>\include\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct  t_rver {
    UH      maker;          /*Kernel maker's code*/
    UH      prid;           /*Identification number of the kernel*/
    UH      spver;          /*Version number of the ITRON Specification*/
    UH      prver;          /*Version number of the kernel*/
    UH      prno[4];        /*Management information of the kernel product*/
} T_RVER;
```

[packet.inc]

```
verinf_maker    EQU   00h   ;Kernel maker's code
verinf_prid     EQU   02h   ;Identification number of the kernel
verinf_spver    EQU   04h   ;Version number of the ITRON Specification
verinf_prver    EQU   06h   ;Version number of the kernel
verinf_prno     EQU   08h   ;Management information of the kernel product
```

The following shows details on version information packet T_RVER.

- maker, verinf_maker
  Stores the kernel maker's code.

  0x011b: Renesas Electronics Co., Ltd.

- prid, verinf_prid
  Stores the identification number of the kernel.

  0x0006: Identification number

- spver, verinf_spver
  Stores the version number of the ITRON Specification.

  0x5403: μITRON4.0 Specification Ver.4.03.00

- prver, verinf_prver
  Stores the version number of the kernel.

  0x01*xx*: Ver.1.*xx*

- prno[0], verinf_prno
  Stores the kernel version type.

  0x0: V-version

- prno[1], verinf_prno + 0x2
  Stores the memory model of the kernel.

  0x1: Large model

- prno[2], verinf_prno + 0x4
  System-reserved area.

- prno[3], verinf_prno + 0x6
  System-reserved area.

12.6 Task Management Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RI78V4 as the task management functions.

Table 12-8 Task Management Functios

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
act_tsk	Activate task (queues an activation request).	Task, Non-task
iact_tsk	Activate task (queues an activation request).	Task, Non-task
can_act	Cancel task activation requests.	Task, Non-task
sta_tsk	Activate task (does not queue an activation request).	Task, Non-task
ista_tsk	Activate task (does not queue an activation request).	Task, Non-task
ext_tsk	Terminate invoking task.	Task
ter_tsk	Terminate task.	Task
chg_pri	Change task priority.	Task, Non-task
ichg_pri	Change task priority.	Task, Non-task
ref_tsk	Reference task state.	Task, Non-task

act_tsk
iact_tsk

Outline

Activate task (queues an activation request).

C format

```
ER      act_tsk ( ID tskid );

ER      iact_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_act_tsk

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_iact_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID tskid;	ID number of the task to be activated. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task to be activated.

Explanation

These service calls move a task specified by parameter *tskid* from the DORMANT state to the READY state.

As a result, the target task is queued at the end on the ready queue corresponding to the initial priority and becomes subject to scheduling by the RI78V4.

If the target task has been moved to a state other than the DORMANT state when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but increments the activation request counter (by added 0x1 to the wakeup request counter).

Note 1 The activation request counter managed by the RI78V4 is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of activation requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

Note 2 An extended infomration "Extended information: exinf" is passed to the task activated by issuing this service call.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_QOVR	-43	Queue overflow (overflow of activation request count "127").

can_act

Outline

Cancel task activation requests.

C format

```
ER_UINT can_act ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_can_act
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID tskid;	ID number of the task for cancelling activation requests. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task for cancelling activation requests.

Explanation

This service call cancels all of the activation requests queued to the task specified by parameter *tskid* (sets the activation request counter to 0x0).

When this service call is terminated normally, the number of cancelled activation requests is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
-	-	Normal completion (activation request count: positive value or 0).

sta_tsk
ista_tsk

Outline

Activate task (does not queue an activation request).

C format

```
ER      sta_tsk ( ID tskid, VP_INT stacd );

ER      ista_tsk ( ID tskid, VP_INT stacd );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #stacd_hi
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #stacd_lo
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_sta_tsk
addw    sp, #04H

MOWW    AX, #stacd_hi
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #stacd_lo
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ista_tsk
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *tskid*;	ID number of the task to be activated.
I	VP_INT *stacd*;	Start code of the task.

Explanation

These service calls move a task specified by parameter *tskid* from the DORMANT state to the READY state.

As a result, the target task is queued at the end on the ready queue corresponding to the initial priority and becomes subject to scheduling by the RI78V4.

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of activation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the DORMANT state, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_OBJ" is returned.

Note 2 A start code "*stacd*" is passed to the task activated by issuing this service call.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is not in the DORMANT state).

ext_tsk

Outline

Terminate invoking task.

C format

```
void    ext_tsk ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
BR      !!_ext_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call moves an invoking task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state.
As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.
If an activation request has been queued to the invoking task (the activation request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call moves the task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state, decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter), and then moves the task from the DORMANT state to the READY state.

Note 1 This service call does not return the OS resource that the invoking task acquired by issuing a service call such as sig_sem or get_mpf. The OS resource have been acquired must therefore be returned before issuing this service call.

Note 2 When moving a task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state, this service call initializes the following information to values that are set during task creation.

- Priority (current priority)
- Wakeup request count
- Suspension count
- Interrupt status

Note 3 If the return instruction is written in a task, it executes the same operation as this service call.

Note 4 In the RI78V4, code efficiency is enhanced by coding the return instruction as a "Terminate invoking task".

Return value

None.

ter_tsk

Outline

Terminate task.

C format

```
ER      ter_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ter_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *tskid*;	ID number of the task to be terminated.

Explanation

This service call forcibly moves a task specified by parameter *tskid* to the DORMANT state.
As a result, the target task is excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.
If an activation request has been queued to the target task (the activation request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call moves the task to the DORMANT state, decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter), and then moves the task from the DORMANT state to the READY state.

Note 1 This service call does not return the OS resource that the target task acquired by issuing a service call such as sig_sem or get_mpf. The OS resource have been acquired must therefore be returned before issuing this service call.

Note 2 When moving a task to the DORMANT state, this service call initializes the following information to values that are set during task creation.

- Priority (current priority)
- Wakeup request count
- Suspension count
- Interrupt status

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is in the DORMANT state).

chg_pri
ichg_pri

Outline

Change task priority.

C format

```
ER      chg_pri ( ID tskid, PRI tskpri );

ER      ichg_pri ( ID tskid, PRI tskpri );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskpri
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_chg_pri
POP     AX

MOVW    AX, #tskpri
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ichg_pri
POP     AX
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID tskid;	ID number of the task whose priority is to be changed. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task whose priority is to be changed.
I	PRI tskpri;	New current priority of the task. TPRI_INI: Initial priority of the task. Value: New current priority of the task.

Explanation

These service calls change the priority of the task specified by parameter *tskid* (current priority) to a value specified by parameter *tskpri*.

Note If the target task is in the RUNNING or READY state after this service call is issued, this service call re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri*, following priority change processing.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is in the DORMANT state).

ref_tsk

Outline

Reference task state.

C format

```
ER      ref_tsk ( ID tskid, T_RTSK *pk_rtsk );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rtsk_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ref_tsk
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID tskid;	ID number of the task to be referenced. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task to be referenced.
O	T_RTSK *pk_rtsk;	Pointer to the packet returning the task state.

Explanation

Stores task state packet (such as current status) of the task specified by parameter *tskid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rtsk*.

Note For details about the task state packet, refer to "12.5.1 Task state packet".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.7 Task Dependent Synchronization Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RI78V4 as the task dependent synchronization functions.

Table 12-9 Task Dependent Synchronization Functions

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
slp_tsk	Put task to sleep (waiting forever).	Task
tslp_tsk	Put task to sleep (with timeout).	Task
wup_tsk	Wakeup task.	Task, Non-task
iwup_tsk	Wakeup task.	Task, Non-task
can_wup	Cancel task wakeup requests.	Task, Non-task
ican_wup	Cancel task wakeup requests.	Task, Non-task
rel_wai	Release task from waiting.	Task, Non-task
irel_wai	Release task from waiting.	Task, Non-task
sus_tsk	Suspend task.	Task, Non-task
isus_tsk	Suspend task.	Task, Non-task
rsm_tsk	Resume suspended task.	Task, Non-task
irsm_tsk	Resume suspended task.	Task, Non-task
frsm_tsk	Forcibly resume suspended task.	Task, Non-task
ifrsm_tsk	Forcibly resume suspended task.	Task, Non-task
dly_tsk	Delay task.	Task

slp_tsk

Outline

Put task to sleep (waiting forever).

C format

```
ER      slp_tsk ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_slp_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.

If a wakeup request has been queued to the target task (the wakeup request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter).

Sleeping State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing wup_tsk.	E_OK
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing iwup_tsk.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).

tslp_tsk

Outline

Put task to sleep (with timeout).

C format

```
ER      tslp_tsk ( TMO tmout );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tmout_lo
MOVW    BC, #tmout_hi
CALL    !!_tslp_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	TMO *tmout*;	Specified timeout (unit: ticks). TMO_FEVR: Waiting forever. TMO_POL: Polling. Value: Specified timeout.

Explanation

This service call moves an invoking task from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (sleeping state).
As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.
If a wakeup request has been queued to the target task (the wakeup request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter).
The sleeping state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Sleeping State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing wup_tsk.	E_OK
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing iwup_tsk.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to slp_tsk will be executed.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.

wup_tsk
iwup_tsk

Outline

Wakeup task.

C format

```
ER      wup_tsk ( ID tskid );

ER      iwup_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_wup_tsk

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_iwup_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID tskid;	ID number of the task to be woken up. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task to be woken up.

Explanation

These service calls cancel the WAITING state (sleeping state) of the task specified by parameter *tskid*.

As a result, the target task is moved from the sleeping state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

If the target task is in a state other than the sleeping state when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but increments the wakeup request counter (by added 0x1 to the wakeup request counter).

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The wakeup request counter managed by the RI78V4 is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of wakeup requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is in the DORMANT state).
E_QOVR	-43	Queue overflow (overflow of wakeup request count "127").

can_wup
ican_wup

Outline

Cancel task wakeup requests.

C format

```
ER_UINT can_wup ( ID tskid );

ER_UINT ican_wup ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_can_wup

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ican_wup
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID tskid;	ID number of the task for cancelling wakeup requests. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task for cancelling wakeup requests.

Explanation

These service calls cancel all of the wakeup requests queued to the task specified by parameter *tskid* (the wakeup request counter is set to 0x0).

When this service call is terminated normally, the number of cancelled wakeup requests is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is in the DORMANT state).
-	-	Normal completion (wakeup request count: positive value or 0).

rel_wai
irel_wai

Outline

Release task from waiting.

C format

```
ER      rel_wai ( ID tskid );

ER      irel_wai ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_rel_wai

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_irel_wai
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *tskid*;	ID number of the task to be released from waiting.

Explanation

These service calls forcibly cancel the WAITING state of the task specified by parameter *tskid*.

As a result, the target task unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

"E_RLWAI" is returned from the service call that triggered the move to the WAITING state (slp_tsk, wai_sem, or the like) to the task whose WAITING state is cancelled by this service call.

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of forced cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the WAITING or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is neither in the WAITING state nor WAITING-SUSPENDED state).

sus_tsk
isus_tsk

Outline

Suspend task.

C format

```
ER      sus_tsk ( ID tskid );

ER      isus_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_sus_tsk

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_isus_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID tskid;	ID number of the task to be suspended. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task to be suspended.

Explanation

These service calls add 0x1 to the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid*, and then move the target task from the RUNNING state to the SUSPENDED state, from the READY state to the SUSPENDED state, or from the WAITING state to the WAITING-SUSPENDED state.

If the target task has moved to the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but only the suspend request counter increment processing is executed.

SUSPENDED State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A cancel request was issued as a result of issuing rsm_tsk.	E_OK
A cancel request was issued as a result of issuing irsm_tsk.	E_OK
Forced release from suspended (accept frsm_tsk while suspended).	E_OK
Forced release from suspended (accept ifrsm_tsk while suspended).	E_OK

Note 1 If the target task is the invoking task when this service call is issued, it is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.

Note 2 The suspend request counter managed by the RI78V4 is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of suspend requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is in the DORMANT state).
E_QOVR	-43	Queue overflow (overflow of suspension count "127").

rsm_tsk
irsm_tsk

Outline

Resume suspended task.

C format

```
ER      rsm_tsk ( ID tskid );

ER      irsm_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_rsm_tsk

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_irsm_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *tskid*;	ID number of the task to be resumed.

Explanation

This service call subtracts 0x1 from the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid*, and then cancels the SUSPENDED state of the target task.

As a result, the target task is moved from the SUSPENDED state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the WAITING state.

If a suspend request is queued (subtraction result is other than 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but only the suspend request counter decrement processing is executed.

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is therefore returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

Macro	Value	Description
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is neither in the SUSPENDED state nor WAITING-SUSPENDED state).

frsm_tsk
ifrsm_tsk

Outline

Forcibly resume suspended task.

C format

```
ER      frsm_tsk ( ID tskid );

ER      ifrsm_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_frsm_tsk

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ifrsm_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *tskid*;	ID number of the task to be resumed.

Explanation

These service calls set the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid* to 0x1 f, and then forcibly cancel the SUSPENDED state of the target task.

As a result, the target task is moved from the SUSPENDED state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the WAITING state.

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of forced cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is therefore returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is neither in the SUSPENDED state nor WAITING-SUSPENDED state).

dly_tsk

Outline

Delay task.

C format

```
ER      dly_tsk ( RELTIM dlytim );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #dlytim_lo
MOVW    BC, #dlytim_hi
CALL    !!_dly_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	`RELTIM dlytim;`	Amount of relative time to delay the invoking task (unit: ticks).

Explanation

This service call moves the invoking task from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (delayed state).
As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RI78V4 scheduling subject.
The delayed state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Delayed State Cancel Operation	Return Value
Delay time specified by parameter *dlytim* has elapsed.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).

12.8 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Semaphores)

The following lists the service calls provided by the RI78V4 as the synchronization and communication functions (semaphores).

Table 12-10 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Semaphores)

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
sig_sem	Release semaphore resource.	Task, Non-task
isig_sem	Release semaphore resource.	Task, Non-task
wai_sem	Acquire semaphore resource (waiting forever).	Task
pol_sem	Acquire semaphore resource (polling).	Task, Non-task
twai_sem	Acquire semaphore resource (with timeout).	Task
ref_sem	Reference semaphore state.	Task, Non-task

sig_sem
isig_sem

Outline

Release semaphore resource.

C format

```
ER      sig_sem ( ID semid );

ER      isig_sem ( ID semid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_sig_sem

MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_isig_sem
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *semid*;	ID number of the semaphore to which resource is released.

Explanation

These service calls return the resource to the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (adds 0x1 to the semaphore counter).

If a task is queued in the wait queue of the target semaphore when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the resource is passed to the relevant task (first task of wait queue).

As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore resource) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

Note 1 If the first task linked in the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The semaphore counter managed by the RI78V4 is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of resources exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

Macro	Value	Description
E_QOVR	-43	Queue overflow (release will exceed maximum resource count "127").

wai_sem

Outline

Acquire semaphore resource (waiting forever).

C format

```
ER      wai_sem ( ID semid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_wai_sem
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *semid*;	ID number of the semaphore from which resource is acquired.

Explanation

This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).

If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target semaphore wait queue in the order of resource acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore state).

Waiting State for a Semaphore State Cancel Operation	Return Value
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing sig_sem.	E_OK
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing isig_sem.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).

pol_sem

Outline

Acquire semaphore resource (polling).

C format

```
ER      pol_sem ( ID semid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_pol_sem
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *semid*;	ID number of the semaphore from which resource is acquired.

Explanation

This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).

If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but "E_TMOUT" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure.

twai_sem

Outline

Acquire semaphore resource (with timeout).

C format

```
ER      twai_sem ( ID semid, TMO tmout );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tmout_hi
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tmout_lo
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_twai_sem
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *semid*;	ID number of the semaphore from which resource is acquired.
I	TMO *tmout*;	Specified timeout (unit: ticks). TMO_FEVR: Waiting forever. TMO_POL: Polling. Value: Specified timeout.

Explanation

This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).

If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target semaphore wait queue in the order of resource acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore resource).

Waiting State for a Semaphore Resource Cancel Operation	Return Value
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing sig_sem.	E_OK
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing isig_sem.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to wai_sem will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to pol_sem will be executed.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.

ref_sem

Outline

Reference semaphore state.

C format

```
ER      ref_sem ( ID semid, T_RSEM *pk_rsem );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rsem_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_ref_sem
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *semid*;	ID number of the semaphore to be referenced.
O	T_RSEM *pk_rsem;	Pointer to the packet returning the semaphore state.

Explanation

Stores semaphore state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rsem*.

Note For details about the semaphore state packet, refer to "12.5.2 Semaphore state packet".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.9 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Eventflags)

The following lists the service calls provided by the RI78V4 as the synchronization and communication functions (eventflags).

Table 12-11 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Eventflags)

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
set_flg	Set eventflag.	Task, Non-task
iset_flg	Set eventflag.	Task, Non-task
clr_flg	Clear eventflag.	Task, Non-task
wai_flg	Wait for eventflag (waiting forever).	Task
pol_flg	Wait for eventflag (polling).	Task, Non-task
twai_flg	Wait for eventflag (with timeout).	Task
ref_flg	Reference eventflag state.	Task, Non-task

set_flg
iset_flg

Outline

Set eventflag.

C format

```
ER      set_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN setptn );

ER      iset_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN setptn );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #setptn
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_set_flg
POP     AX

MOVW    AX, #setptn
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_iset_flg
POP     AX
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *flgid*;	ID number of the eventflag to be set.
I	FLGPTN *setptn*;	Bit pattern to set (16 bits).

Explanation

These service calls set the result of ORing the bit pattern of the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* and the bit pattern specified by parameter *setptn* as the bit pattern of the target eventflag.

If the required condition of the task queued to the target eventflag wait queue is satisfied when this service call is issued, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue at the same time as bit pattern setting processing.

As a result, the relevant task is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

Note 1 If the task linked in the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 If the bit pattern set to the target eventflag is B'1100 and the bit pattern specified by parameter *setptn* is B'1010 when this service call is issued, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is set to B'1110.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

clr_flg

Outline

Clear eventflag.

C format

```
ER      clr_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN clrptn );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #clrptn
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_clr_flg
POP     AX
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *flgid*;	ID number of the eventflag to be cleared.
I	FLGPTN *clrptn*;	Bit pattern to clear (16 bits).

Explanation

This service call sets the result of ANDing the bit pattern set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* and the bit pattern specified by parameter *clrptn* as the bit pattern of the target eventflag.

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of clear requests. If the bit pattern has been cleared, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 If the bit pattern set to the target eventflag is B'1100 and the bit pattern specified by parameter *clrptn* is B'1010 when this service call is issued, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is set to B'1110.

Note 3 This service call does not cancel tasks in the waiting state for an eventflag.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

wai_flg

Outline

Wait for eventflag (waiting forever).

C format

```
ER      wai_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN waiptn, MODE wfmode, FLGPTN *p_flgptn );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #p_flgptn_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #wfmode
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #waiptn
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_wai_flg
addw    sp, #08H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *flgid*;	ID number of the eventflag wait for.
I	FLGPTN *waiptn*;	Wait bit pattern (16 bits).
I	MODE *wfmode*;	Wait mode. TWF_ANDW: AND waiting condition. TWF_ORW: OR waiting condition.
O	FLGPTN **p_flgptn*;	Bit pattern causing a task to be released from waiting.

Explanation

This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waiptn* and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.

If a bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set for the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.

If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, the invoking task is queued to the target eventflag wait queue.

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag).

Waiting State for an Eventflag Cancel Operation	Return Value
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing set_flg.	E_OK
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing iset_flg.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW
  Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW
  Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

Note 1 In the RI78V4, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.

Note 2 The RI78V4 performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_ILUSE	-28	Illegal service call use (there is already a task waiting for an eventflag with the TA_WSGL attribute).
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).

pol_flg

Outline

Wait for eventflag (polling).

C format

```
ER      pol_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN waiptn, MODE wfmode, FLGPTN *p_flgptn );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #p_flgptn_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #wfmode
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #waiptn
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_pol_flg
addw    sp, #08H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	`ID flgid;`	ID number of the eventflag wait for.
I	`FLGPTN waiptn;`	Wait bit pattern (16 bits).
I	`MODE wfmode;`	Wait mode. TWF_ANDW: AND waiting condition. TWF_ORW: OR waiting condition.
O	`FLGPTN *p_flgptn;`	Bit pattern causing a task to be released from waiting.

Explanation

This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waipt*n and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.

If the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set to the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.

If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, "E_TMOUT" is returned.

The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW
  Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW
  Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

Note 1 In the RI78V4, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.

Note 2 The RI78V4 performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

Note 3 In the RI78V4, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.

Note 4 The RI78V4 performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_ILUSE	-28	Illegal service call use (there is already a task waiting for an eventflag with the TA_WSGL attribute).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure.

twai_flg

Outline

Wait for eventflag (with timeout).

C format

```
ER      twai_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN waiptn, MODE wfmode, FLGPTN *p_flgptn, TMO tmout
);
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tmout_hi
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tmout_lo
PUSH    AX
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #p_flgptn_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #wfmode
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #waiptn
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_twai_flg
addw    sp, #0CH
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *flgid*;	ID number of the eventflag wait for.
I	FLGPTN *waiptn*;	Wait bit pattern (16 bits).
I	MODE *wfmode*;	Wait mode. TWF_ANDW: AND waiting condition. TWF_ORW: OR waiting condition.
O	FLGPTN *p_flgptn;	Bit pattern causing a task to be released from waiting.
I	TMO *tmout*;	Specified timeout (unit: ticks). TMO_FEVR: Waiting forever. TMO_POL: Polling. Value: Specified timeout.

Explanation

This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waiptn* and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.

If the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set to the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.

If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, the invoking task is queued to the target eventflag wait queue.

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag).

The waiting state for an eventflag is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for an Eventflag Cancel Operation	Return Value
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing set_flg.	E_OK
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing iset_flg.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW
  Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW
  Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

Note 1 In the RI78V4, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.

Note 2 The RI78V4 performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

Note 3 When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time tmout, processing equivalent to wai_flg will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to pol_flg will be executed.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_ILUSE	-28	Illegal service call use (there is already a task waiting for an eventflag with the TA_WSGL attribute).
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.

ref_flg

Outline

Reference eventflag state.

C format

```
ER      ref_flg ( ID flgid, T_RFLG *pk_rflg );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rflg_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_ref_flg
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID flgid;	ID number of the eventflag to be referenced.
O	T_RFLG *pk_rflg;	Pointer to the packet returning the eventflag state.

Explanation

Stores eventflag state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rflg*.

Note For details about the eventflag state packet, refer to "12.5.3 Eventflag state packet".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.10 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Mailboxes)

The following lists the service calls provided by the RI78V4 as the synchronization and communication functions (mailboxes).

Table 12-12 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Mailboxes)

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
snd_mbx	Send to mailbox.	Task, Non-task
rcv_mbx	Receive from mailbox (waiting forever).	Task
prcv_mbx	Receive from mailbox (polling).	Task, Non-task
trcv_mbx	Receive from mailbox (with timeout).	Task
ref_mbx	Reference mailbox state.	Task, Non-task

snd_mbx

Outline

Send to mailbox.

C format

```
ER      snd_mbx ( ID mbxid, T_MSG *pk_msg );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_msg_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mbxid
CALL    !!_and_mbx
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *mbxid*;	ID number of the mailbox to which the message is sent.
I	T_MSG *pk_msg;	Start address of the message packet to be sent to the mailbox.

Explanation

This service call transmits the message specified by parameter *pk_msg* to the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid* (queues the message in the wait queue).

If a task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue when this service call is issued, the message is not queued but handed over to the relevant task (first task of the wait queue).

As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (receiving waiting for a mailbox) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

Note 1 If the first task of the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 Messages are queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order defined by Attribute (queuing method): mbxatr during configuration (FIFO order or priority order).

Note 3 With the RI78V4 mailbox, only the start address of the message is handed over to the receiving processing program, but the message contents are not copied to a separate area. The message contents can therefore be rewritten even after this service call is issued.

Note 4 For details about the message packet, refer to "12.5.4 Message packet".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

rcv_mbx

Outline

Receive from mailbox (waiting forever).

C format

```
ER      rcv_mbx ( ID mbxid, T_MSG **ppk_msg );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #ppk_msg_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mbxid
CALL    !!_rcv_msg
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *mbxid*;	ID number of the mailbox from which a message is received.
O	T_MSG **ppk_msg;	Start address of the message packet received from the mailbox.

Explanation

This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.

If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but the invoking task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order of message reception request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (receiving waiting state for a mailbox).

Receiving Waiting State for a mailbox Cancel Operation	Return Value
A message was transmitted to the target mailbox as a result of issuing snd_mbx.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

Note For details about the message packet, refer to "12.5.4 Message packet".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).

prcv_mbx

Outline

Receive from mailbox (polling).

C format

```
ER      prcv_mbx ( ID mbxid, T_MSG **ppk_msg );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #ppk_msg_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mbxid
CALL    !!_prcv_mbx
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *mbxid*;	ID number of the mailbox from which a message is received.
O	T_MSG **ppk_msg;	Start address of the message packet received from the mailbox.

Explanation

This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.

If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but "E_TMOUT" is returned.

Note For details about the message packet, refer to "12.5.4 Message packet".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure.

trcv_mbx

Outline

Receive from mailbox (with timeout).

C format

```
ER      trcv_mbx ( ID mbxid, T_MSG **ppk_msg, TMO tmout );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tmout_hi
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tmout_lo
PUSH    AX
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #ppk_msg_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mbxid
CALL    !!_trcv_mbx
addw    sp, #08H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *mbxid*;	ID number of the mailbox from which a message is received.
O	T_MSG ****ppk_msg*;	Start address of the message packet received from the mailbox.
I	TMO *tmout*;	Specified timeout (unit: ticks). TMO_FEVR: Waiting forever. TMO_POL: Polling. Value: Specified timeout.

Explanation

This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.

If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but the invoking task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order of message reception request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (receiving waiting state for a mailbox).

The receiving waiting state for a mailbox is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Receiving Waiting State for a mailbox Cancel Operation	Return Value
A message was transmitted to the target mailbox as a result of issuing snd_mbx.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

Note 1 When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to rcv_mbx will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to prcv_mbx will be executed.

Note 2 For details about the message packet, refer to "12.5.4 Message packet".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.

ref_mbx

Outline

Reference mailbox state.

C format

```
ER      ref_mbx ( ID mbxid, T_RMBX *pk_rmbx );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rmbx_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mbxid
CALL    !!_ref_mbx
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID mbxid;	ID number of the mailbox to be referenced.
O	T_RMBX *pk_rmbx;	Pointer to the packet returning the mailbox state.

Explanation

Stores mailbox state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rmbx*.

Note For details about the mailbox state packet, refer to "12.5.5 Mailbox state packet".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.11 Memory Pool Management Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RI78V4 as the memory pool management functions.

Table 12-13 Memory Pool Management Functions

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
get_mpf	Acquire fixed-sized memory block (waiting forever).	Task
pget_mpf	Acquire fixed-sized memory block (polling).	Task, Non-task
tget_mpf	Acquire fixed-sized memory block (with timeout).	Task
rel_mpf	Release fixed-sized memory block.	Task, Non-task
ref_mpf	Reference fixed-sized memory pool state.	Task, Non-task

get_mpf

Outline

Acquire fixed-sized memory block (waiting forever).

C format

```
ER      get_mpf ( ID mpfid, VP *p_blk );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #p_blk_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mpfid
CALL    !!_get_mpf
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *mpfid*;	ID number of the fixed-sized memory pool from which a memory block is acquired.
O	VP **p_blk*;	Start address of the acquired memory block.

Explanation

This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.

If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue in the order of memory block acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block).

The waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Fixed-sized Memory Block Cancel Operation	Return Value
A memory block was returned to the target fixed-sized memory pool as a result of issuing rel_mpf.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).

pget_mpf

Outline

Acquire fixed-sized memory block (polling).

C format

```
ER      pget_mpf ( ID mpfid, VP *p_blk );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #p_blk_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mpfid
CALL    !!_pget_mpf
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *mpfid*;	ID number of the fixed-sized memory pool from which a memory block is acquired.
O	VP *p_blk;	Start address of the acquired memory block.

Explanation

This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.

If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but "E_TMOUT" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure.

tget_mpf

Outline

Acquire fixed-sized memory block (with timeout).

C format

```
ER      tget_mpf ( ID mpfid, VP *p_blk, TMO tmout );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tmout_hi
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tmout_lo
PUSH    AX
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #p_blk_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mpfid
CALL    !!_tget_mpf
addw    sp, #08H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *mpfid*;	ID number of the fixed-sized memory pool from which a memory block is acquired.
O	VP **p_blk*;	Start address of the acquired memory block.
I	TMO *tmout*;	Specified timeout (unit: ticks). TMO_FEVR: Waiting forever. TMO_POL: Polling. Value: Specified timeout.

Explanation

This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.

If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue in the order of memory block acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block).

The waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Fixed-sized Memory Block Cancel Operation	Return Value
A memory block was returned to the target fixed-sized memory pool as a result of issuing rel_mpf.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to get_mpf will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to pget_mpf will be executed.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.

rel_mpf

Outline

Release fixed-sized memory block.

C format

```
ER      rel_mpf ( ID mpfid, VP blk );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #blk_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mpfid
CALL    !!_rel_mpf
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *mpfid*;	ID number of the fixed-sized memory pool to which the memory block is released.
I	VP *blk*;	Start address of the memory block to be released.

Explanation

This service call returns the memory block specified by parameter *blk* to the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid*.

If a task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue when this service call is issued, memory block return processing is not performed but memory blocks are returned to the relevant task (first task of wait queue).

As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

Note 1 If the first task of the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The RI78V4 does not clear the memory blocks before returning them. The contents of the returned memory blocks are therefore undefined.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

ref_mpf

Outline

Reference fixed-sized memory pool state.

C format

```
ER      ref_mpf ( ID mpfid, T_RMPF *pk_rmpf );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rmpf_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mpfid
CALL    !!_ref_mpf
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID mpfid;	ID number of the fixed-sized memory pool to be referenced.
O	T_RMPF *pk_rmpf;	Pointer to the packet returning the fixed-sized memory pool state.

Explanation

Stores fixed-sized memory pool state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rmpf*.

Note For details about the fixed-sized memory pool state packet, refer to "12.5.6 Fixed-sized memory pool state packet".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.12 Time Management Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RI78V4 as the time management functions.

Table 12-14 Time Management Functions

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
sta_cyc	Start cyclic handler operation.	Task, Non-task
stp_cyc	Stop cyclic handler operation.	Task, Non-task
ref_cyc	Reference cyclic handler state.	Task, Non-task

sta_cyc

Outline

Start cyclic handler operation.

C format

```
ER      sta_cyc ( ID cycid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #cycid
CALL    !!_sta_cyc
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *cycid*;	ID number of the cyclic handler operation to be started.

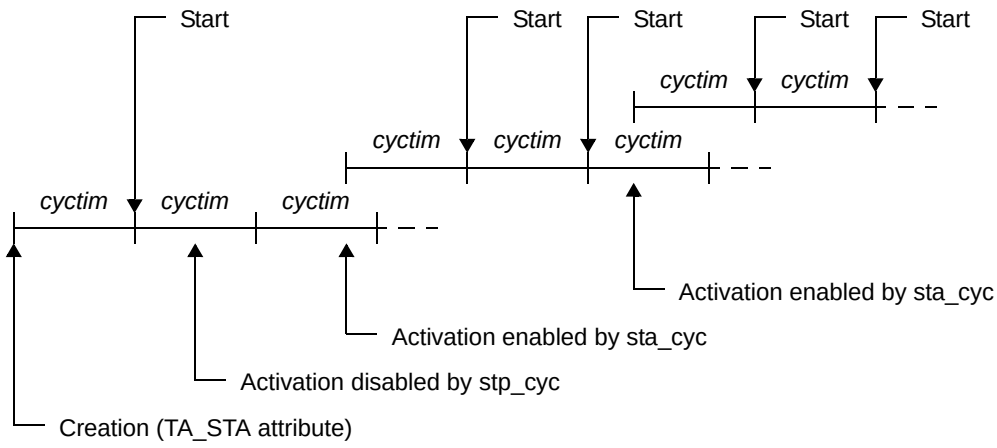
Explanation

This service call moves the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* from the non-operational state (STP state) to operational state (STA state).

As a result, the target cyclic handler is handled as an activation target of the RI78V4.

Note This service call does not perform queuing of start requests. If the target cyclic handler has been moved to the operational state (STA state), only activation cycle re-set processing is executed.
The relative time interval from the output of this service call until the first activation request is output is always the activation phase (activation cycle cyctim) using the output of this service call as the reference point.

[Cyclic handler activation image]



Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

stp_cyc

Outline

Stop cyclic handler operation.

C format

```
ER      stp_cyc ( ID cycid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #cycid
CALL    !!_stp_cyc
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *cycid*;	ID number of the cyclic handler operation to be stopped.

Explanation

This service call moves the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* from the operational state (STA state) to non-operational state (STP state).
As a result, the target cyclic handler is excluded from activation targets of the RI78V4 until issuance of sta_cyc.

Note This service call does not perform queuing of stop requests. If the target cyclic handler has been moved to the non-operational state (STP state), therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

ref_cyc

Outline

Reference cyclic handler state.

C format

```
ER      ref_cyc ( ID cycid, T_RCYC *pk_rcyc );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rcyc_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #cycid
CALL    !!_ref_cyc
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID *cycid*;	ID number of the cyclic handler to be referenced.
O	T_RCYC **pk_rcyc*;	Pointer to the packet returning the cyclic handler state.

Explanation

Stores cyclic handler state packet (such as current status) of the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rcyc*.

Note For details about the cyclic handler state packet, refer to "12.5.7 Cyclic handler state packet".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.13 System State Management Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RI78V4 as the system state management functions.

Table 12-15 System State Management Functions

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
rot_rdq	Rotate task precedence.	Task, Non-task
irot_rdq	Rotate task precedence.	Task, Non-task
get_tid	Reference task ID in the RUNNING state.	Task, Non-task
iget_tid	Reference task ID in the RUNNING state.	Task, Non-task
loc_cpu	Lock the CPU.	Task, Non-task
iloc_cpu	Lock the CPU.	Task, Non-task
unl_cpu	Unlock the CPU.	Task, Non-task
iunl_cpu	Unlock the CPU.	Task, Non-task
dis_dsp	Disable dispatching.	Task
ena_dsp	Enable dispatching.	Task
sns_ctx	Reference contexts.	Task, Non-task
sns_loc	Reference CPU state.	Task, Non-task
sns_dsp	Reference dispatching state.	Task, Non-task
sns_dpn	Reference dispatch pending state.	Task, Non-task

rot_rdq
irot_rdq

Outline

Rotate task precedence.

C format

```
ER      rot_rdq ( PRI tskpri );

ER      irot_rdq ( PRI tskpri );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskpri
CALL    !!_rot_rdq

MOVW    AX, #tskpri
CALL    !!_irot_rdq
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	PRI tskpri;	Priority of the tasks whose precedence is rotated. TPRI_SELF: Current priority of the invoking task. Value: Priority of the tasks whose precedence is rotated.

Explanation

This service call re-queues the first task of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri* to the end of the queue to change the task execution order explicitly.

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of rotation requests. If no task is queued to the ready queue corresponding to the relevant priority, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 Round-robin scheduling can be implemented by issuing this service call via a cyclic handler in a constant cycle.

Note 3 The ready queue is a hash table that uses priority as the key, and tasks that have entered an executable state (READY state or RUNNING state) are queued in FIFO order.
Therefore, the scheduler realizes the RI78V4's Scheduling System by executing task detection processing from the highest priority level of the ready queue upon activation, and upon detection of queued tasks, giving the CPU use right to the first task of the proper priority level.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

get_tid
iget_tid

Outline

Reference task ID in the RUNNING state.

C format

```
ER      get_tid ( ID *p_tskid );

ER      iget_tid ( ID *p_tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #p_tskid_lo
MOVW    BC, #p_tskid_hi
CALL    !!_get_tid

MOVW    AX, #p_tskid_lo
MOVW    BC, #p_tskid_hi
CALL    !!_iget_tid
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
O	`ID *p_tskid;`	ID number of the task in the RUNNING state.

Explanation

These service calls store the ID of a task in the RUNNING state in the area specified by parameter *p_tskid*.

Note This service call stores TSK_NONE in the area specified by parameter *p_tskid* if no tasks that have entered the RUNNING state exist (all tasks in the IDLE state).

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

loc_cpu
iloc_cpu

Outline

Lock the CPU.

C format

```
ER      loc_cpu ( void );

ER      iloc_cpu ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_loc_cpu

CALL    !!_iloc_cpu
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

These service calls change the system status type to the CPU locked state.

As a result, maskable interrupt acknowledgment processing is prohibited during the interval from this service call is issued until unl_cpu or iunl_cpu is issued, and service call issuance is also restricted.

If a maskable interrupt is created during the interval from this service call is issued until unl_cpu or iunl_cpu is issued, the RI78V4 delays transition to the relevant interrupt processing (interrupt handler) until either unl_cpu or iunl_cpu is issued.

The service calls that can be issued in the CPU locked state are limited to the one listed below.

Service Call	Function
loc_cpu, iloc_cpu	Lock the CPU.
unl_cpu, iunl_cpu	Unlock the CPU.
sns_ctx	Reference contexts.
sns_loc	Reference CPU state.
sns_dsp	Reference dispatching state.
sns_dpn	Reference dispatch pending state.

Note 1 The CPU locked state changed by issuing this service call must be cancelled before the processing program that issued this service call ends.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of lock requests. If the system is in the CPU locked state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 3 The RI78V4 implements disabling of maskable interrupt acknowledgment bu manipulating the interrupt mask flag register (MK*xx*) and the in-service priority flag (ISP*x*) of the program status word (PSW). Therefore, manipulating of these registers from the processing program is prohibited from when this service call is issued until unl_cpu or iunl_cpu is issued.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

unl_cpu
iunl_cpu

Outline

Unlock the CPU.

C format

```
ER      unl_cpu ( void );

ER      iunl_cpu ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_unl_cpu

CALL    !!_iunl_cpu
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

These service calls change the system status to the CPU unlocked state.

As a result, acknowledge processing of maskable interrupts prohibited through issuance of either loc_cpu or iloc_cpu is enabled, and the restriction on service call issuance is released.

If a maskable interrupt is created during the interval from when either loc_cpu or iloc_cpu is issued until this service call is issued, the RI78V4 delays transition to the relevant interrupt processing (interrupt handler) until this service call is issued.

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of cancellation requests. If the system is in the CPU unlocked state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 The RI78V4 implements enabling of maskable interrupt acknowledgment bu manipulating the interrupt mask flag register (MK*xx*) and the in-service priority flag (ISP*x*) of the program status word (PSW). Therefore, manipulating of these registers from the processing program is prohibited from when loc_cpu or iloc_cpu is issued until this service call is issued.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

dis_dsp

Outline

Disable dispatching.

C format

```
ER      dis_dsp ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_dis_dsp
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call changes the system status to the dispatching disabled state.

As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) is disabled from when this service call is issued until ena_dsp is issued.

If a service call (chg_pri, sig_sem, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when this service call is issued until ena_dsp is issued, the RI78V4 executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until ena_dsp is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of disable requests. If the system is in the dispatching disabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 The dispatching disabled state changed by issuing this service call must be cancelled before the task that issued this service call moves to the DORMANT state.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

ena_dsp

Outline

Enable dispatching.

C format

```
ER      ena_dsp ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_ena_dsp
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call changes the system status to the dispatching enabled state.
As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) that has been disabled by issuing dis_dsp is enabled.
If a service call (chg_pri, sig_sem, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when dis_dsp is issued until this service call is issued, the RI78V4 executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until this service call is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

Note This service call does not perform queuing of enable requests. If the system is in the dispatching enabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

sns_ctx

Outline

Reference contexts.

C format

```
BOOL    sns_ctx ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_sns_ctx
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call acquires the context type of the processing program that issued this service call (non-task context or task context).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired context type (TRUE: non-task context, FALSE: task context) is returned.

Non-task contexts:	cyclic handler, interrupt handler
Task contexts:	task

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
TRUE	1	Normal completion (Non-task contexts).
FALSE	0	Normal completion (Task contexts).

sns_loc

Outline

Reference CPU state.

C format

```
BOOL    sns_loc ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_sns_loc
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (CPU locked state or CPU unlocked state).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: CPU locked state, FALSE: CPU unlocked state) is returned.

Note The system enters the CPU locked state when loc_cpu or iloc_cpu is issued, and enters the CPU unlocked state when unl_cpu or iunl_cpu is issued.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
TRUE	1	Normal completion (CPU locked state).
FALSE	0	Normal completion (CPU unlocked state).

sns_dsp

Outline

Reference dispatching state.

C format

```
BOOL      sns_dsp ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_sns_dsp
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (dispatching disabled state or dispatching enabled state).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: dispatching disabled state, FALSE: dispatching enabled state) is returned.

Note The system enters the dispatching disabled state when dis_dsp is issued, and enters the dispatching enabled state when ena_dsp is issued.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
TRUE	1	Normal completion (dispatching disabled state).
FALSE	0	Normal completion (dispatching enabled state).

sns_dpn

Outline

Reference dispatch pending state.

C format

```
BOOL    sns_dpn ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_sns_dpn
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (whether in dispatch pending state or not).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: dispatch pending state, FALSE: dispatch not-pending state) is returned.

Note The dispatch pending state designates the state in which explicit execution of dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is prohibited by issuing either the dis_dsp, loc_cpu, or iloc_cpu service call, as well as the state during which processing of a non-task is being executed.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
TRUE	1	Normal completion (dispatch pending state).
FALSE	0	Normal completion (other state).

12.14 System Configuration Management Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RI78V4 as the system configuration management functions.

Table 12-16 System Configuration Management Functions

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
ref_ver	Reference version information.	Task, Non-task

ref_ver

Outline

Reference version information.

C format

```
ER      ref_ver ( T_RVER *pk_rver );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    AX, #pk_rver_lo
CALL    !!_ref_ver
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
O	T_RVER *pk_rver;	Pointer to the packet returning the version information.

Explanation

The service call stores version information packet (such as kernel maker's code) to the area specified by parameter *pk_rver*.

Note For details about the version information packet, refer to "12.5.8 Version information packet".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

CHAPTER 13 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE

This chapter explains the coding method of the system configuration file required to output information files (system information table file and system information header file) that contain data to be provided for the RI78V4.

13.1 Notation Method

The following shows the notation method of system configuration files.

- Character code
  Create the system configuration file using ASCII code.
  The CF78V4 distinguishes lower cases "a to z" and upper cases "A to Z".

  Note For japanese language coding, Shit-JIS codes can be used only for comments.

- Comment
  In a system configuration file, parts between /* and */ and parts from two successive slashes (//) to the line end are regarded as comments.

- Numeric
  In a system configuration file, words starting with a numeric value (0 to 9) are regarded as numeric values.
  The CF78V4 distinguishes numeric values as follows.

Octal:	Words starting with 0
Decimal:	Words starting with a value other than 0
Hexadecimal:	Words starting with 0x or 0X

  Note Elements of a word are limited to numeric values 0 to 9.

- Object name
  In a system configuration file, words starting with a letter of "a to z, A to Z", or underscore "_", within 24 characters, are regarded as object names.

  Note Elements of a word are limited to alphanumeric characters "a to z, A to Z, 0 to 9", and underscore "_".

- Symbol name
  In a system configuration file, words starting with a letter of "a to z, A to Z", or underscore "_", within 30 characters, are regarded as symbol names.

  Note 1 Elements of a word are limited to alphanumeric characters "a to z, A to Z, 0 to 9", and underscore "_".

  Note 2 The CF78V4 distinguishes the object name and symbol name according to the context in the system configuration file.

- Keywords
  The words shown below are reserved by the CF78V4 as keywords.
  Using these words for any other purpose specified is therefore prohibited.

  CRE_CYC, CRE_FLG, CRE_MBX, CRE_MPF, CRE_SEM, CRE_TSK, kl_work0, k_work1, k_work2, k_work3, MAX_PRI, null, NULL, SYS_STK, TA_ACT, TA_ASM, TA_CLR, TA_DISINT, TA_ENAINT, TA_HLNG, TA_MFIFO, TA_MPRI, TA_PHS, TA_RSTR, TA_STA, TA_TFIFO, TA_TPRI, TA_WMUL, TA_WSGL

Note The CF78V4 does not call C preprocessors. Coding of preprocessing directives (#include, #define, #if, or the like) in the system configuration file is therefore prohibited.

13.2 Configuration Information

The configuration information that is described in a system configuration file is divided into the following two main types.

- System Information
  This information consists of fundamental data required for the RI78V4 operation.
  - System stack information
  - Task priority information

- Static API Information
  This information consists of data for management objects required to implement the functions probided by the RI78V4.
  - Task information
  - Semaphore information
  - Eventflag information
  - Mailbox information
  - Fixed-sized memory pool information
  - Cyclic handler information

13.2.1 Cautions

In the system configuration file, describe the system configuration information (System Information, Static API Information) in the following order.

1) System Information description
2) Static API Information description

The following describes a system configuration file description format.

Figure 13-1 System Configuration File Description Format

```
-- System Information (System stack information, etc.) descriptin
/* ............ */

-- Static API Information(Task information, etc.) description
/* ............ */
```

Note Up to 40,000 lines and up to 1,000 characters per line can be written in a system configuration file.

13.3 System Information

The following describes the format that must be observed when describing the system information in the system configuration file.

The GOTHIC-FONT characters in following descriptions are the reserved words, and italic face characters are the portion that the user must write the relevant numeric value.

Items enclosed by square brackets "[ ]" can be omitted.

13.3.1 System stack information

Define the following item as system stack information:

1) Stack size: sys_stksz

Only one information item can be defined as stack information.
The following shows the system stack information format.

```
SYS_STK ( sys_stksz );
```

The items constituting the system stack information are as follows.

1) Stack size: *sys_stksz*

Specifies the system stack size (in bytes).
A value between 0 and 65534, aligned to a 2-byte boundary, can be specified for *sys_stksz*.

Note 1 The system stack is allocated to the k_stack segment.

Note 2 For details about the estimation of the system stack size, refer to See “13.5.1 System stack size“.

13.3.2 Task priority information

Define the following items as task priority information:

1) Priority range: maxtpri

The number of task priority information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 1.
The following shows the task priority information format.

```
[MAX_PRI ( maxtpri );]
```

The items constituting the task priority information are as follows.

1) Priority range: *maxtpri*

Specifies the priority range of a task (maximum value of Initial priority: itskpri, or maximum value of priority specified when issuing chg_pri).
A value between 1 and 15 can be specified for *maxtpri*.

Note If definition of this information is omitted, the task priority range is set to "15".

13.4 Static API Information

The following describes the format that must be observed when describing the static API information in the system configuration file.

The GOTHIC-FONT characters in following descriptions are the reserved words, and italic face characters are the portion that the user must write the relevant numeric value, symbol name, or keyword.

Items enclosed by square brackets "[ ]" can be omitted.

13.4.1 Task information

Define the following items as task information:

1) Task name: tskid
2) Attribute (coding language, initial activation status, initial interrupt status): tskatr
3) Extended information: exinf
4) Start address: task
5) Initial priority: itskpri
6) Stack size: stksz
7) System-reserved area: stk

The number of task information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 1 to 127.
The following shows the task information format.

```
CRE_TSK ( tskid, { tskatr, exinf, task, itskpri, stksz, stk } );
```

The items constituting the task information are as follows.

1) Task name: *tskid*

Specifies the task name.
An object name can be specified for *tskid*.

Note The CF78V4 outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the task names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, task names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define tskid   ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
tskid   equ     ID
```

2) Attribute (coding language, initial activation status, initial interrupt status): *tskatr*

Specifies the attributes (coding language, initial activation status, initial interrupt status) of the task.
The keywords that can be specified for *tskatr* are TA_HLNG, TA_ASM, TA_ACT, TA_ENAINT and TA_DISINT.

[Coding language]
TA_HLNG: Start a processing unit through a C language interface.
TA_ASM: Start a processing unit through an assembly language interface.

[Initial activation status]
TA_ACT: Task is activated after the creation.

[Initial interrupt status]
TA_ENAINT: Enables acknowledgment of maskable interrupts.
TA_DISINT: Disables acknowledgment of maskable interrupts.

Note 1 If specification of TA_ACT is omitted, the initial task activation status is set to the "DORMANT state".

Note 2 If specification of TA_ENAINT and TA_DISINT is omitted, the initial task interrupt status is set to "interrupts acknowledgment enabled".

3) Extended information: *exinf*

Specifies the extended information of the task.
Values that can be specified for *exinf* are from 0 to 1048575, or symbol names written in C.

Note *exinf* is passed as an extended information to the target task when the task is activated by act_tsk or iact_tsk. The target task can therefore handle *exinf* in the same manner as handling function parameters.

4) Start address: *task*

Specifies the start address of the task.
Values that can be specified for *task* are symbol names written in C.

Note 1 When a task is in written in C as shown below, the value specified by this item is "func_task".

```
#pragma     rtos_task       func_task

#include    <kernel.h>
#include    <kernel_id.h>

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ............ */

    ext_tsk ( );
}
```

Note 2 When a task is in written in assembly language as shown below, the value specified by this item is "func_task".

```
$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)

    PUBLIC  _func_task
    CSEG
_func_task:
    PUSH    BC
    PUSH    AX

    ; ............

    BR      !!_ext_tsk
    END
```

5) Initial priority: *itskpri*

Specifies the initial priority of the task.
Values that can be specified for *itskpri* are limited to "1 to Priority range: maxtpri".

6) Stack size: *stksz*

Specifies the stack size (in bytes) of the task.
A value between 0 and 65534, aligned to a 2-byte boundary, can be specified for *stksz*.

Note 1 The task stack is allocated to the k_stack segment.

Note 2 For details about the estimation of the stack size of the task, refer to See “13.5.2 Stack size of the task“.

7) System-reserved area: *stk*

System-reserved area.
Values that can be specified for *stk* are limited to NULL characters.

13.4.2 Semaphore information

Define the following items as semaphore information:

1) Semaphore name: semid
2) Attribute (queuing method): sematr
3) Initial resource count: isemcnt
4) System-reserved area: maxsem

The number of semaphore information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 127.
The following shows the semaphore information format.

```
CRE_SEM ( semid, { sematr, isemcnt, maxsem } );
```

The items constituting the semaphore information are as follows.

1) Semaphore name: *semid*

Specifies the semaphore name.
An object name can be specified for *semid*.

Note The CF78V4 outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the semaphore names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, semaphore names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define semid   ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
semid   equ     ID
```

2) Attribute (queuing method): *sematr*

Specifies the attribute (queuing method) of the semaphore.
The keywords that can be specified for *sematr* are TA_TFIFO.

[Queuing method]
TA_TFIFO: If a resource could not be acquired (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when wai_sem or twai_sem is issued, the task is queued to the semaphore wait queue in the order of resource acquisition request.

3) Initial resource count: *isemcnt*

Specifies the initial resource count of the semaphore.
A value between 0 and 127 can be specified for *isemcnt*.

4) System-reserved area: *maxsem*

System-reserved area.
Values that can be specified for *maxsem* are limited to 127.

13.4.3 Eventflag information

Define the following items as eventflag information:

1) Eventflag name: flgid

2) Attribute (queuing method, queuing count, bit pattern clear): flgatr

3) System-reserved area: iflgptn

The number of eventflag information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 127.
The following shows the eventflag information format.

```
CRE_FLG ( flgid, { flgatr, iflgptn } );
```

The items constituting the eventflag information are as follows.

1) Eventflag name: *flgid*

Specifies the eventflag name.
An object name can be specified for *flgid*.

Note The CF78V4 outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the eventflag names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, eventflag names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define flgid   ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
flgid   equ     ID
```

2) Attribute (queuing method, queuing count, bit pattern clear): *flgatr*

Specifies the attributes (queuing method, queuing count, clear) of the eventflag.
The keywords that can be specified for *flgatr* are TA_TFIFO, TA_WSGL and TA_CLR.

[Queuing method]
TA_TFIFO: If the bit pattern of the eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when wai_flg or twai_flg is issued, the task is queued to the eventflag wait queue.

[Queuing count]
TA_WSGL: Only one task is allowed to be in the waiting state for the eventflag.

[Bit pattern clear]
TA_CLR: Bit pattern is cleared when a task is released from the waiting state for that eventflag.

Note If specification of TA_CLR is omitted, "not clear bit patterns if the required condition is satisfied" is set.

3) System-reserved area: *iflgptn*

System-reserved area.
Values that can be specified for *iflgptn* are limited to 0.

13.4.4 Mailbox information

Define the following items as mailbox information:

1) Mailbox name: mbxid
2) Attribute (queuing method): mbxatr
3) System-reserved area: maxmpri
4) System-reserved area: mprihd

The number of mailbox information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 127.
The following shows the mailbox information format.

```
CRE_MBX ( mbxid, { mbxatr, maxmpri, mprihd } );
```

The items constituting the mailbox information are as follows.

1) Mailbox name: *mbxid*

Specifies the mailbox name.
An object name can be specified for *mbxid*.

Note The CF78V4 outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the mailbox names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, mailbox names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define mbxid   ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
mbxid   equ     ID
```

2) Attribute (queuing method): *mbxatr*

Specifies the attributes (task queuing method, message queuing method) of the mailbox.
The keywords that can be specified for *mbxatr* are TA_TFIFO, TA_MFIFO and TA_MPRI.

[Task queuing method]
TA_TFIFO: If the message could not be received from the mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when rcv_mbx or trcv_mbx is issued, the task is queued to the mailbox wait queue in the order of message reception request.

[Message queuing method]
TA_MFIFO: If a task is not queued to the mailbox wait queue when snd_mbx is issued, the message is queued to the mailbox wait queue in the order of message transmission request.
TA_MPRI: If a task is not queued to the mailbox wait queue when snd_mbx is issued, the message is queued to the mailbox wait queue in the order of message priority.

3) System-reserved area: *maxmpri*

System-reserved area.
Values that can be specified for *maxmpri* are limited to 0.

4) System-reserved area: *mprihd*

System-reserved area.
The keywords that can be specified for *mprihd* are NULL.

13.4.5 Fixed-sized memory pool information

Define the following items as fixed-sized memory pool information:

1) Fixed-sized memory pool name: mpfid
2) Attribute (queuing method): mpfatr
3) Total number of memory blocks: blkcnt
4) Memory block size: blksz
5) Segment name: seg_nam
6) System-reserved area: mpf

The number of fixed-sized memory pool information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 127.
The following shows the fixed-sized memory pool information format.

```
CRE_MPF ( mpfid, { mpfatr, blkcnt, blksz[:seg_nam], mpf } );
```

The items constituting the fixed-sized memory pool information are as follows.

1) Fixed-sized memory pool name: *mpfid*

Specifies the fixed-sized memory pool name.
An object name can be specified for *mpfid*.

Note The CF78V4 outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the fixed-sized memory pool names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, fixed-sized memory pool names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define mpfid   ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
mpfid   equ     ID
```

2) Attribute (queuing method): *mpfatr*

Specifies the attribute (queuing method) of the fixed-sized memory pool.
The keywords that can be specified for *mpfatr* are TA_TFIFO.

[Queuing method]
TA_TFIFO: If a memory block could not be acquired (no available memory blocks exist) when get_mpf or tget_mpf is issued, the task is queued to the fixed-sized memory pool wait queue in the order of memory block acquisition request.

3) Total number of memory blocks: *blkcnt*

Specifies the total number of memory blocks.
A value between 1 and 16383 can be specified for *blkcnt*.

4) Memory block size: *blksz*

Specifies the memory block size (in bytes).
A value between 4 and 65534, aligned to a 2-byte boundary, can be specified for *blksz*.

5) Segment name: *seg_nam*

Specifies where the fixed-sized memory pool is to be allocated.
Values that can be specified for *seg_nam* are limited to k_work0, k_work1, k_work2, or k_work3.

[Fixed-sized memory pool allocation segment]

k_work0:	Allocates the fixed-sized memory pool to the k_work0 segment.
k_work1:	Allocates the fixed-sized memory pool to the k_work1 segment.
k_work2:	Allocates the fixed-sized memory pool to the k_work2 segment.
k_work3:	Allocates the fixed-sized memory pool to the k_work3 segment.

Note If specification of *seg_nam* is omitted, the fixed-sized memory pool is allocated to the k_work0 segment.

6) System-reserved area: *mpf*

System-reserved area.
Values that can be specified for *mpf* are limited to NULL characters.

13.4.6 Cyclic handler information

Define the following items as cyclic handler information:

1) Cyclic handler name: cycid
2) Attribute (coding language, initial activation status): cycatr
3) System-reserved area: exinf
4) Start address: cychdr
5) Activation cycle: cyctim
6) System-reserved area: cycphs

The number of cyclic handler information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 127.
The following shows the cyclic handler information format.

```
CRE_CYC ( cycid, { cycatr, exinf, cychdr, cyctim, cycphs } );
```

The items constituting the cyclic handler information are as follows.

1) Cyclic handler name: *cycid*

Specifies the cyclic handler name.
An object name can be specified for *cycid*.

Note The CF78V4 outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the cyclic handler names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, cyclic handler names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define cycid   ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
cycid   equ     ID
```

2) Attribute (coding language, initial activation status): *cycatr*

Specifies the attributes (coding language, initial activation status) of the cyclic handler.
The keywords that can be specified for *cycatr* are TA_HLNG, TA_ASM and TA_STA.

[Coding language]
TA_HLNG: Start a processing unit through a C language interface.
TA_ASM: Start a processing unit through an assembly language interface.

[Initial operation status]
TA_STA: Cyclic handler is in an operational state after the creation.

Note If specification of TA_STA is omitted, the cyclic handler initial activation status is set to "non-operational state (STP state)".

3) System-reserved area: *exinf*

System-reserved area.
Values that can be specified for *exinf* are limited to 0.

4) Start address: *cychdr*

Specifies the start address of the cyclic handler.
Values that can be specified for *cychdr* are symbol names written in C.

Note 1 When the cyclic handler is in written in C as shown below, the value specified by this item is "func_cychdr".

```
#include    <kernel.h>
#include    <kernel_id.h>

void
func_cychdr ( void )
{
    /* ............ */

    return;
}
```

Note 2 When the cyclic handler is in written in assembly language as shown below, the value specified by this item is "func_cychdr".

```
$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)

    PUBLIC  _func_cychdr
    CSEG
_func_cychdr:
    ; ............

    RET
    END
```

5) Activation cycle: *cyctim*

Specifies the activation cycle (unit: ticks) of the cyclic handler.
A value between 1 and 4294967295 can be specified for *cyctim*.

6) System-reserved area: *cycphs*

System-reserved area.
Values that can be specified for *cycphs* are limited to 0.

13.5 Stack Size Estimation

13.5.1 System stack size

The formula for calculating the system stack size is shown below.

[Expression 1: System stack size]
sys_stk = MAX(sys_stkA, sys_stkB, sys_stkC) + 2 (bytes)

[Expression 2: System stack size use pattern A]
sys_stkA = tsksvc + int0 + int1 + int2 + int3

[Expression 3: System stack size use pattern B]
sys_stkB = Size used by user in idle routine

[Expression 4: System stack size use pattern C]
sys_stkC = Size used by user in initialization routine

[Expression 5: Maximum size of system stack used during service call executed by task]
Maximum size of system stack used during service call executed by task

[Expression 6: Size of int0, int1]
Intx = Maximum size of interrupts used by stack in interrupts of level x
= Size used by user in interrupts

[Expression 7: Size of int2, int2]
intx = Maximum size of interrupts used by stack in interrupts of level x
= Size used by user in interrupts + allsvc + 16

[Expression 8: Total size used by system calls used in interrupt]
allsvc = For service call arguments + For internal processing by program issued the service call + For system stack internal processing

Specify the system stack size in the system configuration file. Note, however, that the size that is actually secured is the value specified in the configurator + 2 bytes. Consequently, the value that is actually specified in the system configuration file is the sys_stk value calculated in expression 1 minus 2 bytes.

We recommend specifying a system stack size higher than the estimate in order to reduce the danger of a stack overflow.

The example is shown below.

[Conditions]

- Execute a pol_flg service call from task "task1".
- Execute a snd_mbx service call from task "task2".
- Interrupt int0 is a level-0 interrupt process not managed by the OS. The stack is not used in the interrupt.
- Interrupt int2 is a level-2 OS interrupt handler. Execute the snd_mbx service call, and use 12 bytes of stack in the interrupt.
- Interrupt int3A is a level-3 OS interrupt handler. Execute the pol_flg service call, and use 16 bytes of stack in the interrupt.
- Interrupt int3B is a level-3 OS interrupt handler. Execute Timer_Handler, the stack is not used in the interrupt.
- Idle "idl" does not use the stack.
- The initialization routine "ini" uses 24 bytes of stack in the routine.

[Expression]

tsksvc = MAX(size of system stack used by pol_flg, size of system stack used by snd_mbx)
= MAX(6,4) = 6 bytes

int0 = 0 + 0 = 0 byte

int1 = undefined = 0 byte

int2 = 12 + (4 + 8 + 4) + 16 = 44 bytes

int3 = MAX(int3A, int3B) = MAX(54,20) = 54 bytes

int3A = 16 + (8 + 8 + 6) + 16 = 54 bytes

int3B = 0 + (0 + 0 + 6) + 16 = 20 bytes

sys_stkA = tsksvc + int0 + int1 + int2 + int3
= 6 + 0 + 0 + 44 + 54
= 104 bytes

Note This is the max in sys_stkA/B/C, so after this size or greater is secured.

sys_stkB = Stack size used by user in idle routine = 0 byte

sys_stkC = Stack size used by user in initialization routine = 20 bytes

sys_stk = MAX(sys_stkA, sys_stkB, sys_stkC) + 2
= MAX(104, 0, 20)
= 104 + 2 = 106 bytes

The system stack size will be the 104 bytes of sys_stkA.
The size specified in the system configuration file will be 104 bytes.

Note Below is shown the stack size used in service calls/functions used in the example.

	For Service Call Arguments	For Internal Processing by Program Issued the Service Call	For System Stack Internal Processing
pol_flg	8	8	6
snd_mbx	4	8	4
Timer_Handler function	0	—	6

13.5.2 Stack size of the task

The formula for calculating the stack size of the task is shown below.

[Expression 1: No interrupts generated in task]
Task stack size = size used by user + service-call argument size + 28 (bytes)

[Expression 2: Interrupts generated in task]
Task stack size = size used by user + service-call argument size + 28 + 18 (bytes)

Specify the task stack size in the system configuration file. Note, however, that the size that is actually secured is the value specified in the configurator 28 bytes. Consequently, the value that is actually specified in the system configuration file is the sys_stk value calculated in expression 1 or expression 2 minus 28 bytes.

These 28 bytes include the stack size used when system calls are issued. Note, however, that the stack size used when issuing system calls must secure the size used by the user in addition to the 28 bytes of argument stack size. The argument stack sized used by each service call is different. Table 12-1 summarizes these sizes.

The task stack size is the largest stack size used in the task in question. For this reason, if there is a service call with an argument stack of 4 bytes, and another with 8 bytes, then the pattern that uses the most stack - 8 bytes - will be secured.

The above material refers to tasks where interrupts are not accepted (all interrupts are disabled). An additional 18 bytes must be secured for tasks where interrupts are accepted.

Note that these 18 bytes include the stack size when the _kernel_int_entry function is called (required to be called when an interrupt starts). _kernel_int_entry only retires the 18 bytes of data from the stack, it does not replace it. The data is recovered upon the call to the ret_int function, which must be called when the interrupt ends.

Example 1 Task "task1" uses the pol_flg and snd_mbx service calls, and has no other functions or processes that use the stack.

If interrupts are not accepted in the task, interrupts are not accepted in task1, so Expression 1 is the formula for calculating stack usage.
Because there are no functions or processes that use the stack, the size used by the user is 0.
When the size of arguments to all service calls is investigated, the results are as shown below.

Service-call argument size (pol_flg) = 8 bytes
Service-call argument size (snd_mbx) = 4 bytes

The largest stack size is used in the call to pol_flg, so this is specified in Expression 1.

Task stack size = size used by user + service-call argument size (pol_flg) + 28
= 0 + 8 + 28
= 36 bytes

The size specified in the system configuration file will be the above minus 28 bytes, which equals 8 bytes.

Example 2 In task "task1", function A (using 12 bytes of stack) makes a pol_flg service call, and function B (using 20 bytes of stack) makes a snd_mbx service call.

Since interrupts are accepted in the task, Expression 2 is used as the calculation formula. List the patterns in order to find the one that uses the most stack.

Pattern A = size used by user (for function A) + service-call argument size (pol_flg) + 28 + 18
= 12 + 8 + 28 + 18
= 66 bytes

Pattern B = size used by user (for function B) + service-call argument size (snd_mbx) + 28 + 18
= 20 + 4 + 28 + 18
= 70 bytes

Compare pattern B with pattern A. The pattern that uses the most stack is pattern A, at 70 bytes.
The size specified in the system configuration file will be the above minus 28 bytes, which equals 42 bytes.

13.6 Description Examples

The following describes an example for coding the system configuration file.

Figure 13-2 Example of System Configuration File

```
-- System Information description
SYS_STK ( 256 );
MAX_PRI ( 15 );

-- Static API Information description
CRE_TSK ( ID_tsk, { TA_HLNG | TA_ACT | TA_DISINT, 0xa, func_task, 1 256, NULL } );
CRE_TSK ( ID_tskA, { TA_HLNG | TA_ACT, 0x14, func_taskA, 2, 256, NULL } );
CRE_TSK ( ID_tskB, { TA_ASM | TA_ENAINT, 0x1e, func_taskB, 3, 512, NULL } );

CRE_SEM ( ID_semA, { TA_TFIFO, 0, 127 } );
CRE_SEM ( ID_semB, { TA_TFIFO, 127, 127 } );

CRE_FLG ( ID_flgA, { TA_TFIFO | TA_WSGL | TA_CLR, 0 } );
CRE_FLG ( ID_flgB, { TA_TFIFO | TA_WSGL, 0 } );

CRE_MBX ( ID_mbxA, { TA_TFIFO | TA_MFIFO, 0, NULL } );
CRE_MBX ( ID_mbxB, { TA_TFIFO | TA_MPRI, 0, MULL } );

CRE_MPF ( ID_mpfA, { TA_TFIFO, 10, 8:k_work1, NULL } );
CRE_MPF ( ID_mpfB, { TA_TFIFO, 8, 16, NULL } );

CRE_CYC ( ID_cycA, { TA_HLNG | TA_STA, 0, func_cychdrA, 1, 0 } );
CRE_CYC ( ID_cycB, { TA_ASM, 0, func_cychdrB, 2, 0 } );
```

CHAPTER 14 CONFIGURATOR CF78V4

This chapter explains configurator CF78V4, which is provided by the RI78V4 as a utility tool useful for system construction.

14.1 Outline

To build systems (load module) that use functions provided by the RI78V4, the information storing data to be provided for the RI78V4 is required.

Since information files are basically enumerations of data, it is possible to describe them with various editors.

Information files, however, do not excel in descriptiveness and readability; therefore substantial time and effort are required when they are described.

To solve this problem, the RI78V4 provides a utility tool (configurator CF78V4) that converts a system configuration file which excels in descriptiveness and readability into information files.

The CF78V4 reads the system configuration file as a input file, and then outputs information files.

The information files output from the CF78V4 are explained below.

- System information table file
  An information file that stores data required for the operation of the RI78V4.

- System information header file
  An information file that stores matching between ID numbers and object names (e.g. task, and semaphore names) described in the system configuration file.
  The CF78V4 can output two types of system information header files for C and assembly languages.

14.2 Activation Method

14.2.1 Activating from command line

The following is how to activate the CF78V4 from the command line.

Note that, in the examples below, "C>" indicates the command prompt, "Δ" indicates pressing of the space key, and "<Enter>" indicates pressing of the enter key.

The activation options enclosed in "[ ]" can be omitted.

```
C> cf78v4.exe Δ [@command file] Δ [-i Δ <SIT file> | -ni] Δ
   [-dc Δ <C header file> | -ndc] Δ [-da Δ <ASM header file> | -nda] Δ [-V] Δ
   [-help] Δ <CF file> <Enter>
```

The details of each activation option are explained below:

- @command file
  Specifies the command file name to be input.

  If omitted The activation options specified on the command line is valid.

  Note 1 Specify the input file name “command file” within 255 characters including the path name.

  Note 2 For the details about the command file, refer to “14.2.3 Command file”.

- -iΔ<SIT file>
  Specifies the system information table file name to be output.

  If omitted If omitted, the CF78V4 interprets it that -iΔsit.asm is specified.

  Note Specify the output file name “<SIT file>” within 255 characters including the path name.

- -ni
  Disables output of the system information table file.

  If omitted If omitted, the CF78V4 interprets it that -iΔsit.asm is specified.

- -dcΔ<C header file>
  Specifies the system information header file (for C language) name to be output.

  If omitted If omitted, the CF78V4 interprets it that -dcΔkernel_id.h is specified.

  Note Specify the output file name “<SIT file>” within 255 characters including the path name.

- -ndc
  Disables output of the system information header file (for C language).

  If omitted If omitted, the CF78V4 interprets it that -dcΔkernel_id.h is specified.

- -daΔ<ASM header file>
  Specifies the system information header file (for assembly language) name to be output.

  If omitted If omitted, the CF78V4 interprets it that -daΔkernel_id.inc is specified.

Note Specify the output file name “<ASM header file>” within 255 characters including the path name.

- -nda
  Disables output of the system information header file (for assembly language).

  If omitted If omitted, the CF78V4 interprets it that -daΔkernel_id.inc .inc is specified.

- -V
  Outputs version information for the CF78V4 to the standard output.

  Note If this activation option is specified, the CF78V4 handles other activation options as invalid options and suppresses outputting of information files.

- -help
  Outputs the usage of the activation options for the CF78V4 to the standard output.

  Note If this activation option is specified, the CF78V4 handles other activation options as invalid options and suppresses outputting of information files.

- <CF file>
  Specifies the system configuration file name to be input.

  Note 1 Specify the input file name “<CF file>” within 255 characters including the path name.

  Note 2 This input file name can be omitted only when -V or -help is specified.

14.2.2 Activating from CubeSuite+

This is started when the CubeSuite+ performs a build, in accordance with the setting on the Property panel, on the [System Configuration File Related Information] tab.

14.2.3 Command file

The CF78V4 performs command file support from the objectives that eliminate specified probable activation option character count restrictions in the command lines.

Description formats of the command file are described below.

1) Comment lines
Lines that start with # are treated as comment lines.

2) Dilimiting activation options
Delimit activation options using a space code, tab code, or a linefeed code.

Note For activation options consist of the *-xxx* part and parameter part, like "-iΔ<SIT file>", "-dcΔ<C header file>", and "-daΔ<ASM header file>", delimit the *-xxx* part and parameter part using a space code, tab code, or a linefeed code.
When specifying a folder name that includes a space code in the parameter part, enclose the parameter part using double-quotation marks (") as shown in Figure 14-1.

3) Maximum number of characters
Up to 50 lines and up to 4,096 characters per line can be coded in a command file.

The following shows an example of activation option coding whereby "system configuration file CF_file.cfg is loaded from the current folder, system information table filesit_file.asm is output to a folder in C:\Program Files\tmp, system information header file C_header.h (for C) is output to a folder in C:\tmp, system information header file ASM_header.inc (for assembly language) is output to a folder in C:\tmp".

Figure 14-1 Example of Command File Description

```
# Command File
-i "C:\Program Files\tmp\sit_file.asm"
-dc C:\tmp\C_header.h
-da
"C:\tmp\ASM_header.inc"
CF_file.cfg
```

14.2.4 Command input examples

The following shows the CF78V4 command input examples.

In these examples, "C>" indicates the command prompt, "Δ" indicates the space key input, and "<Enter>" indicates the ENTER key input.

1) After loading command file cmd_file from the current folder, the activation option defined in cmd_file is executed.

```
C> cf78v4.exe Δ @cmd_file <Enter>
```

2) After loading system configuration file CF_file.cfg from the current folder, system information table filesit_file.asm, the system information header file C_header.h (for C) and system information header file ASM_header.inc (for assembly language) are output to the current folder.

```
C> cf78v4.exe Δ -iΔsit_file.asm Δ -dc Δ C_header.h Δ -da Δ ASM_header.inc Δ
   CF_file.cfg <Enter>
```

3) After loading system configuration file CF_file.cfg from the current folder, system information table filesit.asm, the system information header file kernel_id.h (for C) and system information header file kernel_id.inc (for assembly language) are output to the current folder.

```
C> cf78v4.exe Δ CF_file.cfg <Enter>
```

4) After loading system configuration file CF_file.cfg from a folder in C:\tmp, system information table filesit_file.asm, the system information header file C_header.h (for C) is output to a folder in C:\tmp.

```
C> cf78v4.exe Δ -i Δ C:\tmp\sit_file.asm Δ -dc Δ C:\tmp\C_header.h Δ -nda Δ
   C:\tmp\CF_file.cfg <Enter>
```

5) After loading system configuration file CF_file.cfg from a folder in C:\tmp, the system information table file sit_file.asm is output to a folder in C:\Program Files\tmp.

```
C> cf78v4.exeΔ-i Δ ”C:\Program Files\tmp\sit_file.asm" Δ -ndc Δ -nda Δ
   C:\tmp\CF_file.cfg <Enter>
```

6) CF78V4 version information is output to the standard output.

```
C> cf78v4.exe Δ -V <Enter>
```

7) Information related to the CF78V4 activation option (type, usage, or the like) is output to the standard output.

```
C> cf78v4.exe Δ -help <Enter>
```

APPENDIX A WINDOW REFERENCE

This appendix explains the window/panels that are used when the activation option for the CF78V4 is specified from the integrated development environment platform “CubeSuite+”.

A.1 Description

The following shows the list of window/panels.

Table A-1 List of Window/Panels

Window/Panel Name	Function Description
Main window	This is the first window to be open when the CubeSuite+ is launched.
Project Tree panel	This panel is used to display the project components in tree view.
Property panel	This panel is used to display the detailed information on the Realtime OS node, system configuration file, or the like that is selected on the Project Tree panel and change the settings of the information.

Main window

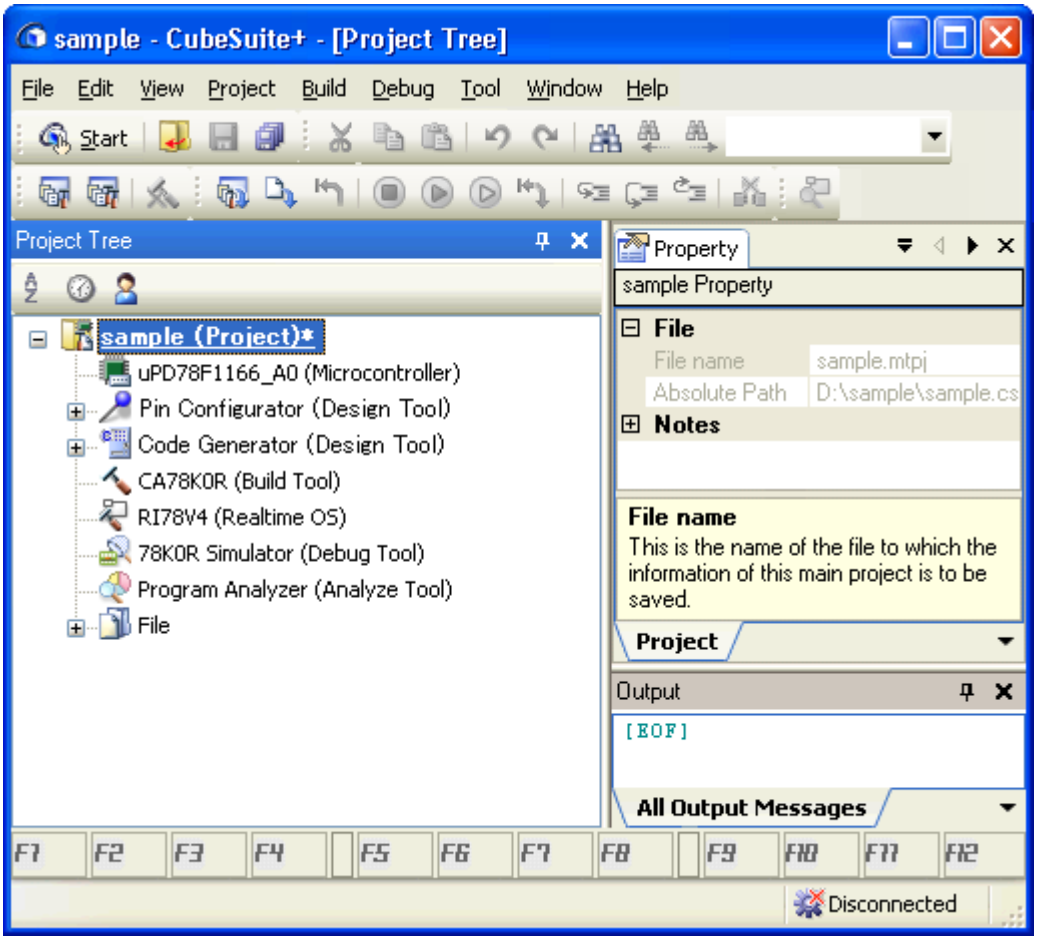
Outline

This is the first window to be open when the CubeSuite+ is launched.
This window is used to control the user program execution and open panels for the build process.

This window can be opened as follows:

- Select Windows [start] -> [All programs] -> [Renesas Electronics CubeSuite+] -> [CubeSuite+]

Display image



Explanation of each area

1) Menu bar

Displays the menus relate to realtime OS.
Contents of each menu can be customized in the User Setting dialog box.

- [View]

Realtime OS	The [View] menu shows the cascading menu to start the tools of realtime OS.
Resource Information	Opens the Realtime OS Resource Information panel. Note that this menu is disabled when the debug tool is not connected.
Performance Analyzer	Opens the AZ78K0R window. Note that this menu is disabled when the debug tool is not connected.

2) Toolbar

Displays the buttons relate to realtime OS.
Buttons on the toolbar can be customized in the User Setting dialog box. You can also create a new toolbar in the same dialog box.

- Realtime OS toolbar

	Opens the Realtime OS Resource Information panel. Note that this button is disabled when the debug tool is not connected.

3) Panel display area

The following panels are displayed in this area.

- Project Tree panel
- Property panel
- Output panel

See the each panel section for details of the contents of the display.

Note See “CubeSuite+ Integrated Development User's Manual: RL78,78K0R Build” for details about the Output panel.

Project Tree panel

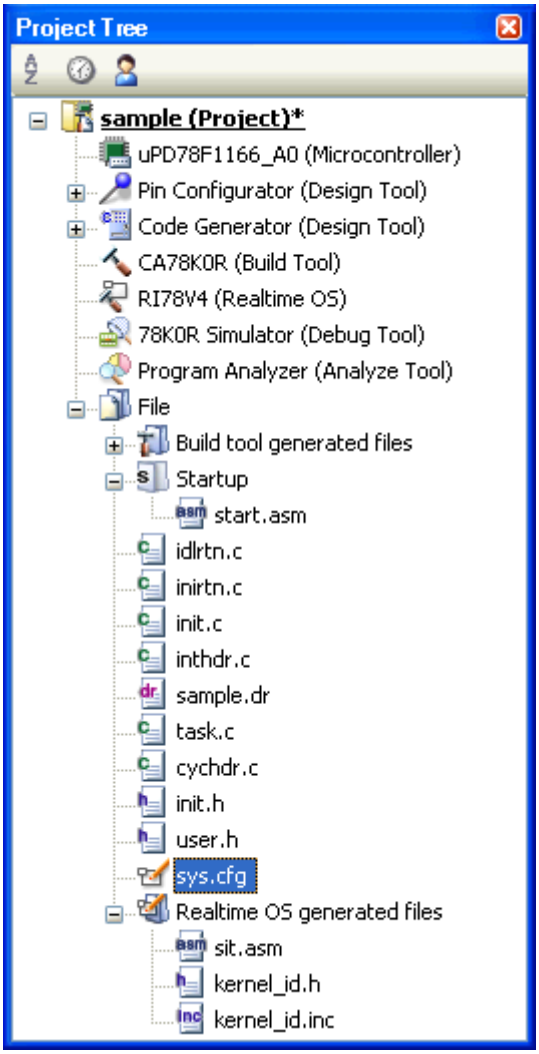
Outline

This panel is used to display the project components such as Realtime OS node, system configuration file, etc. in tree view.

This panel can be opened as follows:

- From the [View] menu, select [Project Tree].

Display image



Explanation of each area

1) Project tree area

Project components are displayed in tree view with the following given node.

Node	Description
RI78V4(Realtime OS) (referred to as “Realtime OS node”)	Realtime OS to be used.
xxx.cfg	System configuration file.
Realtime OS generated files (referred to as “Realtime OS generated files node”)	The following information files appear directly below the node created when a system configuration file is added. - System information table file (.asm) - System information header file (for C language) (.h) - System information header file (for assembly language) (.inc) This node and files displayed under this node cannot be deleted directly. This node and files displayed under this node will no longer appear if you remove the system configuration file from the project.

Context menu

1) When the Realtime OS node or Realtime OS generated files node is selected

Property	Displays the selected node's property on the Property panel.

2) When the system configuration file or an information file is selected

Assemble	Assembles the selected assembler source file. Note that this menu is only displayed when a system information table file is selected. Note that this menu is disabled when the build tool is in operation.
Open	Opens the selected file with the application corresponds to the file extension. Note that this menu is disabled when multiple files are selected.
Open with Internal Editor...	Opens the selected file with the Editor panel. Note that this menu is disabled when multiple files are selected.
Open with Selected Application...	Opens the Open with Program dialog box to open the selected file with the designated application. Note that this menu is disabled when multiple files are selected.
Open Folder with Explorer	Opens the folder that contains the selected file with Explorer.
Add	Shows the cascading menu to add files and category nodes to the project.
Add File...	Opens the Add Existing File dialog box to add the selected file to the project.
Add New File...	Opens the Add File dialog box to create a file with the selected file type and add to the project.

Add New Category	Adds a new category node at the same level as the selected file. You can rename the category. This menu is disabled while the build tool is running, and if categories are nested 20 levels.
Remove from Project	Removes the selected file from the project. The file itself is not deleted from the file system. Note that this menu is disabled when the build tool is in operation.
Copy	Copies the selected file to the clipboard. When the file name is in editing, the characters of the selection are copied to the clipboard.
Paste	This menu is always disabled.
Rename	You can rename the selected file. The actual file is also renamed.
Property	Displays the selected file's property on the Property panel.

Property panel

Outline

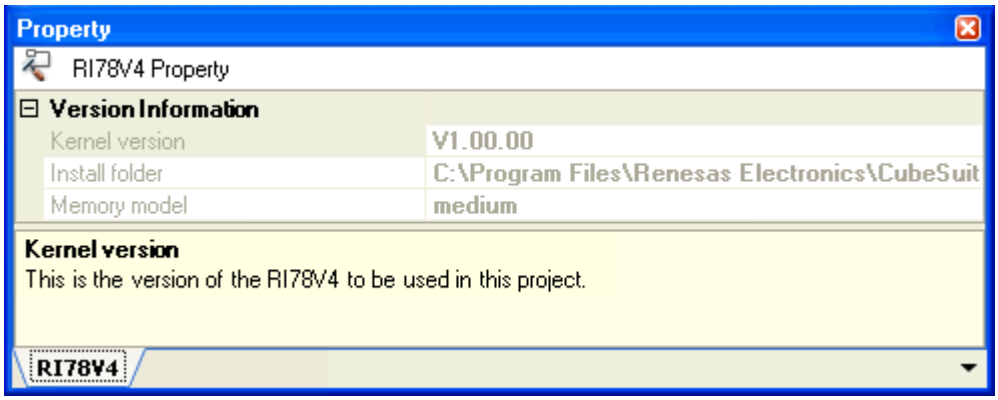
This panel is used to display the detailed information on the Realtime OS node, system configuration file, or the like that is selected on the Project Tree panel by every category and change the settings of the information.

This panel can be opened as follows:

- On the Project Tree panel, select the Realtime OS node, system configuration file, or the like, and then select the [View] menu -> [Property] or the [Property] from the context menu.

Note When either one of the Realtime OS node, system configuration file, or the like on the Project Tree panel while the Property panel is opened, the detailed information of the selected node is displayed.

Display image



Explanation of each area

1) Selected node area

Display the name of the selected node on the Project Tree panel.
When multiple nodes are selected, this area is blank.

2) Detailed information display/change area

In this area, the detailed information on the Realtime OS node, system configuration file, or the like that is selected on the Project Tree panel is displayed by every category in the list. And the settings of the information can be changed directly.
Mark ⊟ indicates that all the items in the category are expanded. Mark ⊞ indicates that all the items are collapsed.
You can expand/collapse the items by clicking these marks or double clicking the category name
See the section on each tab for the details of the display/setting in the category and its contents.

3) Property description area

Display the brief description of the categories and their contents selected in the detailed information display/change area.

4) Tab selection area

Categories for the display of the detailed information are changed by selecting a tab.
In this panel, the following tabs are contained (see the section on each tab for the details of the display/setting on the tab).

- When the Realtime OS node is selected on the Project Tree panel
  - [RI78V4] tab
- When the system configuration file is selected on the Project Tree panel
  - [System Configuration File Related Information] tab
  - [File Information] tab
- When the Realtime OS generated files node is selected on the Project Tree panel
  - [Category Information] tab
- When the system information table file is selected on the Project Tree panel
  - [Build Settings] tab
  - [Individual Assemble Options] tab
  - [File Information] tab
- When the system information header file is selected on the Project Tree panel
  - [File Information] tab

Note1 See “CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User’s Manual: RL78,78K0R Build” for details about the [File Information] tab, [Category Information] tab, [Build Settings] tab, and [Individual Assemble Options] tab.

Note2 When multiple components are selected on the Project Tree panel, only the tab that is common to all the components is displayed. If the value of the property is modified, that is taken effect to the selected components all of which are common to all.

[Edit] menu (only available for the Project Tree panel)

Undo	Cancels the previous edit operation of the value of the property.
Cut	While editing the value of the property, cuts the selected characters and copies them to the clip board.
Copy	Copies the selected characters of the property to the clip board.
Paste	While editing the value of the property, inserts the contents of the clip board.
Delete	While editing the value of the property, deletes the selected character string.
Select All	While editing the value of the property, selects all the characters of the selected property.

Context menu

Undo	Cancels the previous edit operation of the value of the property.
Cut	While editing the value of the property, cuts the selected characters and copies them to the clip board.
Copy	Copies the selected characters of the property to the clip board.

Paste	While editing the value of the property, inserts the contents of the clip board.
Delete	While editing the value of the property, deletes the selected character string.
Select All	While editing the value of the property, selects all the characters of the selected property.
Reset to Default	Restores the configuration of the selected item to the default configuration of the project. For the [Individual Assemble Options] tab, restores to the configuration of the general option.
Reset All to Default	Restores all the configuration of the current tab to the default configuration of the project. For the [Individual Assemble Options] tab, restores to the configuration of the general option.

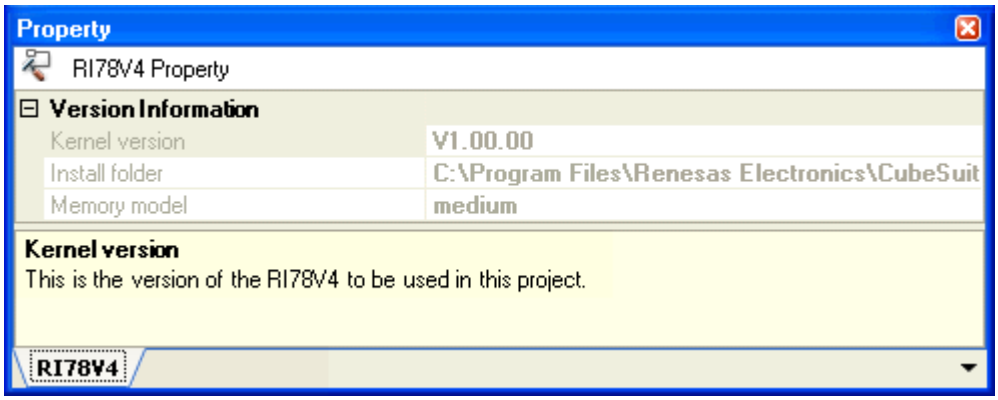
[RI78V4] tab

Outline

This tab shows the detailed information on the RI78V4 to be used categorized by the following.

- Version Information

Display image



Explanation of each area

1) [Version Information]

The detailed information on the version of the RI78V4 are displayed.

Kernel version	Display the version of the RI78V4 to be used. Note that the version is set permanently when the project is created, and cannot be changed.	
	Default	*Using the RI78V4 version*
	How to change	Changes not allowed
Install folder	Display the folder in which the RI78V4 to be used is installed with the absolute path.	
	Default	*The folder in which the RI78V4 to be used is installed*
	How to change	Changes not allowed
Memory model	Display the memory model set in the project. Display the same value as the value of the [Memory model type] property of the build tool.	
	Default	*The memory model selected in the property of the build tool*
	How to change	Changes not allowed

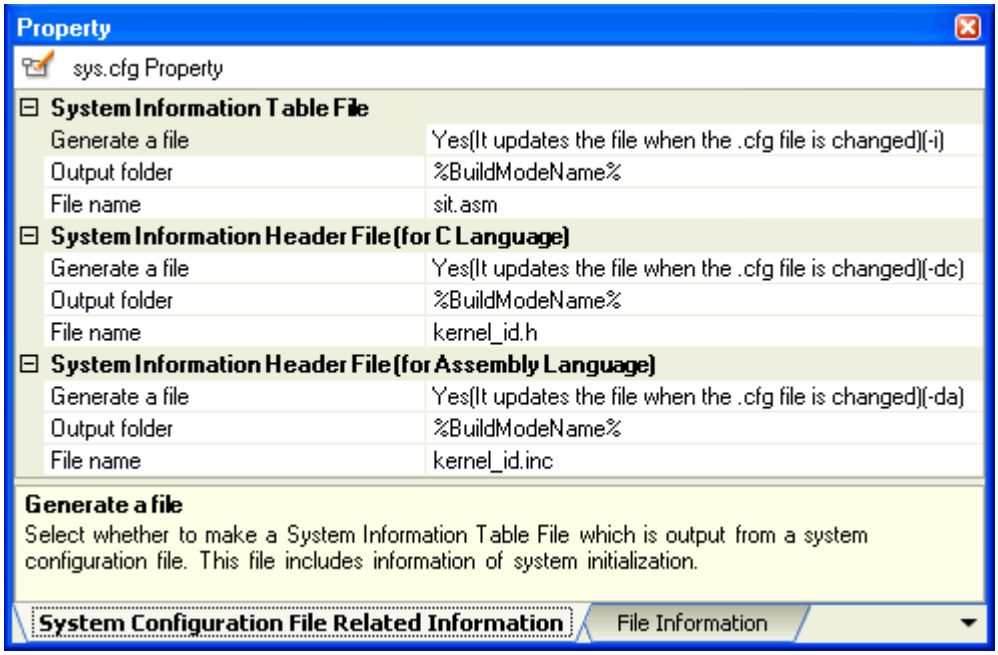
[System Configuration File Related Information] tab

Outline

This tab shows the detailed information on the using system configuration file categorized by the following and the configuration can be changed.

- System information table file
- System information header file (for C language)
- System information header file (for assembly language)

Display image


Property
sys.cfg Property
System Information Table File
Generate a file
Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-i)
Output folder
%BuildModeName%
File name
sit.asm
System Information Header File(for C Language)
Generate a file
Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-dc)
Output folder
%BuildModeName%
File name
kernel_id.h
System Information Header File(for Assembly Language)
Generate a file
Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-da)
Output folder
%BuildModeName%
File name
kernel_id.inc
Generate a file
Select whether to make a System Information Table File which is output from a system configuration file. This file includes information of system initialization.
System Configuration File Related Information
File Information

Explanation of each area

1) [System Information Table File]

The detailed information on the system information table file are displayed and the configuration can be changed.

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="5">Generate a file</td><td colspan="3">Select whether to generate a system information table file and whether to update the file when the system configuration file is changed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Default</td><td colspan="2">Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-i)</td></tr>
<tr><td>How to change</td><td colspan="2">Select from the drop-down list.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Restriction</td><td>Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-i)</td><td>Generates a new system information table file and displays it on the project tree.
If the system configuration file is changed when there is already a system information table file, then the system information table file is updated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Yes(It does not update the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-ni)</td><td>Does not update the system information table file when the system configuration file is changed.
An error occurs during build if this item is selected when the system information table file does not exist.</td></tr>
<tr><td>No(It does not register the file to the project)(-ni)</td><td>Does not generate a system information table file and does not display it on the project tree.
If this item is selected when there is already a system information table file, then the file itself is not deleted.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Output folder</td><td colspan="3">Specify the folder for outputting the system information table file.
If a relative path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder.
If an absolute path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder (unless the drives are different).
The following macro name is available as an embedded macro.
%BuildModeName%: Replaces with the build mode name.
If this field is left blank, macro name "%BuildModeName%" will be displayed.
This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-ni)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Default</td><td colspan="2">%BuildModeName%</td></tr>
<tr><td>How to change</td><td colspan="2">Directly enter to the text box or edit by the Browse For Folder dialog box which appears when clicking the [...] button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Restriction</td><td colspan="2">Up to 247 characters</td></tr>
</table>

File name	Specify the system information table file name. If the file name is changed, the name of the file displayed on the project tree. Use the extension ".asm". If the extension is different or omitted, ".asm" is automatically added. This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-ni)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.	
	Default	sit.asm
	How to change	Directly enter to the text box.
	Restriction	Up to 259 characters

2) [System Information Header File (for C Language)]

The detailed information on the system information header file (for C language) are displayed and the configuration can be changed.

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="5">Generate a file</td><td colspan="3">Select whether to generate a system information header file (for C language) and whether to update the file when the system configuration file is changed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Default</td><td colspan="2">Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-dc)</td></tr>
<tr><td>How to change</td><td colspan="2">Select from the drop-down list.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Restriction</td><td>Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-dc)</td><td>Generates a system information header file and displays it on the project tree.
If the system configuration file is changed when there is already a system information header file, then the system information header file is updated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Yes(It does not update the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-ndc)</td><td>Does not update the system information header file when the system configuration file is changed.
An error occurs during build if this item is selected when the system information header file does not exist.</td></tr>
<tr><td>No(It does not register the file to the project)(-ndc)</td><td>Does not generate a system information header file and does not display it on the project tree.
If this item is selected when there is already a system information header file, then the file itself is not deleted.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Output folder</td><td colspan="3">Specify the folder for outputting the system information header file (for C language).
If a relative path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder.
If an absolute path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder (unless the drives are different).
The following macro name is available as an embedded macro.
%BuildModeName%: Replaces with the build mode name.
If this field is left blank, macro name "%BuildModeName%" will be displayed.
This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-ndc)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Default</td><td colspan="2">%BuildModeName%</td></tr>
<tr><td>How to change</td><td colspan="2">Directly enter to the text box or edit by the Browse For Folder dialog box which appears when clicking the [...] button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Restriction</td><td colspan="2">Up to 247 characters</td></tr>
</table>

File name	Specify the system information header file (for C language) name. If the file name is changed, the name of the file displayed on the project tree. Use the extension ".h". If the extension is different or omitted, ".h" is automatically added. This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-ndc)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.	
	Default	kernel_id.h
	How to change	Directly enter to the text box.
	Restriction	Up to 259 characters

3) [System Information Header File (for Assembly Language)]

The detailed information on the system information header file (for assembly language) are displayed and the configuration can be changed.

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="5">Generate a file</td><td colspan="3">Select whether to generate a system information header file (for assembly language) and whether to update the file when the system configuration file is changed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Default</td><td colspan="2">Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-da)</td></tr>
<tr><td>How to change</td><td colspan="2">Select from the drop-down list.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Restriction</td><td>Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-da)</td><td>Generates a system information header file and displays it on the project tree.
If the system configuration file is changed when there is already a system information header file, then the system information header file is updated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Yes(It does not update the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-nda)</td><td>Does not update the system information header file when the system configuration file is changed.
An error occurs during build if this item is selected when the system information header file does not exist.</td></tr>
<tr><td>No(It does not register the file to the project)(-nda)</td><td>Does not generate a system information header file and does not display it on the project tree.
If this item is selected when there is already a system information header file, then the file itself is not deleted.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Output folder</td><td colspan="3">Specify the folder for outputting the system information header file (for assembly language).
If a relative path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder.
If an absolute path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder (unless the drives are different).
The following macro name is available as an embedded macro.
%BuildModeName%: Replaces with the build mode name.
If this field is left blank, macro name "%BuildModeName%" will be displayed.
This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-nda)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Default</td><td colspan="2">%BuildModeName%</td></tr>
<tr><td>How to change</td><td colspan="2">Directly enter to the text box or edit by the Browse For Folder dialog box which appears when clicking the [...] button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Restriction</td><td colspan="2">Up to 247 characters</td></tr>
</table>

File name	Specify the system information header file (for assembly language) name. If the file name is changed, the name of the file displayed on the project tree. Use the extension ".inc". If the extension is different or omitted, ".inc" is automatically added. This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-nda)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.	
	Default	kernel_id.inc
	How to change	Directly enter to the text box.
	Restriction	Up to 259 characters

APPENDIX B CAUTIONS

B.1 Restriction of Compiler Option

Systems embedding the RI78V4 cannot use the following compile options.

Option	Meaning
-rc	Prohibits from inserting the align data to allocate the members (consisting of 2 or more bytes) in a structure to even address.

B.2 Handling Register Bank

Systems embedding the RI78V4 should generally operate with register bank 0.
If it is necessary to change the register bank, do so in accordance with the specifications below. Changing the register bank is enabled for some routines, and disabled for others.

[Routines where changing the register bank is enabled]

- Task
  In the task, the initial register bank number is set permanently to 0.
  When switching tasks in the RI78V4, only the register bank number and one bank's worth of general registers (task-switching bank) are retired/restored.
  The remaining three banks of general registers are not retired or restored, so if more than two register banks are to be used in the task process, then when changing the register banks, the general register of the register bank before the change must be retired. If it is not retired, then the register bank could be corrupted in the task that is switched to.

- Interrupt servicing not managed by an OS
  When changing a register bank in an interrupt process not matched by the OS, restore the register bank number of the interrupt source when the interrupt ends.

[Routines where changing the register bank is disabled]

- Interrupt handler
  Interrupt handlers inherit the register bank number of the source of the interrupt.

- Cyclic handler
  Cyclic handlers inherit the register bank number of the source of the timer handler interrupt.

- Idle routine
  In the idle routine, the initial register bank number is set permanently to 0.

- Initialization routine
  In the initialization routine, the initial register bank number is set permanently to 0. It is overwritten by register bank 0, regardless of the register bank set before OS initialization (before the call to the __urx_start function).

B.3 Pointer Declarations

When passing a pointer to the RI78V4 service call, care is needed to ensure that a far pointer is passed. Behavior is not guaranteed subsequent to passing a near pointer.

Particular care is needed if a small model or medium model is selected, because pointers will be near if not explicitly declared as near or far. As shown below, explicitly declare the pointer as far, and cast it to a far pointer when passing it to a service call.

The example is shown below.

```
VP __far *pk_msg;

get_mpf(ID_MPF1, (VP __far *)&pk_msg);
snd_mbx(ID_MBX1, (T_MSG __far *)pk_msg);
```

Particular care is needed if a small model or medium model is selected, because pointers will be near if not explicitly declared as near or far. Care must be taken, however, not to pass pointers explicitly declared as near to a service call.

APPENDIX C INDEX

A

act_tsk ... 139

B

boot processing ... 13, 104
- basic form ... 104
- internal processing ... 105

C

can_act ... 141
can_wup ... 155
CF78V4 ... 238
- activation method ... 239

chg_pri ... 146
clr_flg ... 174
conditional compile macro ... 128
configuration information ... 221
- static API information ... 221
- system information ... 221

configurator ... 238
current priority ... 24
current state ... 127
cyclic handler ... 12, 75
- basic form ... 75
- internal processing ... 76

cyclic handler information ... 232
cyclic handler state packet ... 136

D

data type ... 126
directive file ... 14
dis_dsp ... 212
dly_tsk ... 162
DORMANT state ... 23
driving method ... 109
- event-driven system ... 109

E

embedding system ... 21
ena_dsp ... 213
event-driven system ... 109
eventflag ... 50
- clr_flg ... 174
- iset_flg ... 172
- pol_flg ... 177
- ref_flg ... 181
- set_flg ... 172
- twai_flg ... 179
- wai_flg ... 175

eventflag information ... 228
eventflag state packet ... 132
ext_tsk ... 144

F

FCFS method ... 109
fixed-sized memory pool ... 66
- get_mpf ... 192
- pget_mpf ... 194
- ref_mpf ... 199
- rel_mpf ... 197
- tget_mpf ... 195

fixed-sized memory pool information ... 230
fixed-sized memory pool state packet ... 135
frsm_tsk ... 161

G

get_mpf ... 192
get_tid ... 208

I

iact_tsk ... 139
ican_wup ... 155
ichg_pri ... 146
idle routine ... 13, 119
- basic form ... 119
- internal processing ... 120

ifrsm_tsk ... 161

iget_tid ... 208
iloc_cpu ... 209
initialization routine ... 13, 106
basic form ... 106
internal processing ... 107
initial priority ... 24
interrupt entry processing ... 13, 93
basic form ... 94
internal processing ... 94
interrupt handler ... 12, 95
basic form ... 96
internal processing ... 98
interrupt management function ... 93
irel_wai ... 156
irot_rdq ... 206
irsm_tsk ... 159
iset_flg ... 172
isig_sem ... 164
ista_tsk ... 142
isus_tsk ... 157
iunl_cpu ... 211
iwup_tsk ... 153

K

k_const segment ... 15, 66
k_data segment ... 15, 66
kernel initialization module ... 107
k_info segment ... 15, 66
k_stack segment ... 15, 66
k_system segment ... 15, 66
k_work0 segment ... 16, 66
k_work1 segment ... 16, 66
k_work2 segment ... 16, 66
k_work3 segment ... 16, 66

L

load module ... 17
loc_cpu ... 209

M

mailbox ... 59
message ... 60
prcv_mbx ... 187
rcv_mbx ... 185
ref_mbx ... 190
snd_mbx ... 183
trcv_mbx ... 188
mailbox information ... 229
mailbox state packet ... 134
Main window ... 244
memory pool management function ... 66, 191
message ... 60
basic form ... 60
securement of memory area ... 60
message packet ... 133
multiple interrupts ... 101
multi-task OS ... 10

P

packet format ... 129
cyclic handler state packet ... 136
eventflag state packet ... 132
fixed-sized memory pool packet ... 135
mailbox state packet ... 134
message packet ... 133
semaphore state packet ... 131
task state packet ... 129
version information packet ... 137
pget_mpf ... 194
pol_flg ... 177
pol_sem ... 167
prcv_mbx ... 187
priority ... 24
current priority ... 24
initialpriority ... 24
priority level method ... 109
processing program ... 12
cyclic handler ... 12
interrupt handler ... 12
task ... 12
Project Tree panel ... 246
Property panel ... 249

R

rcv_mbx ... 185
ready queue ... 110
READY state ... 23
real-time OS ... 10
ref_cyc ... 204
ref_flg ... 181
ref_mbx ... 190
ref_mpf ... 199
ref_sem ... 170
ref_tsk ... 148
ref_ver ... 219
rel_mpf ... 197
rel_wai ... 156
return value ... 128
RI78V4 ... 10
[RI78V4] tab ... 252
rot_rdq ... 206
rsm_tsk ... 159
RUNNING state ... 23

S

scheduler ... 109
  driving method ... 109
  scheduling system ... 109
scheduling system ... 109
  FCFS method ... 109
  priority level method ... 109
segment ... 14
  k_const ... 15, 66
  k_data ... 15, 66
  k_info ... 15, 66
  k_stack ... 15, 66
  k_system ... 15, 66
  k_work0 ... 16, 66
  k_work1 ... 16, 66
  k_work2 ... 16, 66
  k_work3 ... 16, 66
semaphore ... 44
  isig_sem ... 164
  pol_sem ... 167
  ref_sem ... 170
  sig_sem ... 164
  twai_sem ... 168
  wai_sem ... 166
semaphore information ... 227
semaphore state packet ... 131
set_flg ... 172
service call ... 121
sig_sem ... 164
slp_tsk ... 150
snd_mbx ... 183
sns_ctx ... 214
sns_dpn ... 217
sns_dsp ... 216
sns_loc ... 215
stack size estimation ... 234
sta_cyc ... 201
static API information ... 221, 224
  cyclic handler information ... 232
  eventflag information ... 228
  fized-sized memory pool information ... 230
  mailbox information ... 229
  semaphore information ... 227
  task information ... 224
sta_tsk ... 142
stp_cyc ... 203
SUSPENDED state ... 23
sus_tsk ... 157
synchronization and communication function ... 44
  eventflag ... 50, 171
  mailbox ... 59, 182
  semaphore ... 44, 163
[System Configuration File Related Information] tab ... 253
system configuration file ... 12, 220
system configuration management function ... 103, 218
  ref_ver ... 219
system construction ... 11
system information ... 221, 222
  sytem stack information ... 222
  task priority information ... 223

system information header file ... 238
system information table file ... 238
system stack information ... 222
system state management function ... 80, 205
dis_dsp ... 212
ena_dsp ... 213
get_tid ... 208
iget_tid ... 208
iloc_cpu ... 209
irot_rdq ... 206
iunl_cpu ... 211
loc_cpu ... 209
rot_rdq ... 206
sns_ctx ... 214
sns_dpn ... 217
sns_dsp ... 216
sns_loc ... 215
unl_cpu ... 211

T

task ... 12, 22
basic form ... 25
internal processing ... 26
task dependent synchronization function ... 34, 149
ican_wup ... 155
can_wup ... 155
dly_tsk ... 162
frsm_tsk ... 161
ifrsm_tsk ... 161
irel_wai ... 156
irsm_tsk ... 159
isus_tsk ... 157
iwup_tsk ... 153
rel_wai ... 156
rsm_tsk ... 159
slp_tsk ... 150
sus_tsk ... 157
tslp_tsk ... 151
wup_tsk ... 153
task information ... 224
task management function ... 22, 138
act_tsk ... 139
can_act ... 141
chg_pri ... 146
ext_tsk ... 144
iact_tsk ... 139
ichg_pri ... 146
ista_tsk ... 142
ref_tsk ... 148
sta_tsk ... 142
ter_tsk ... 145
task priority information ... 223
task state ... 22
DORMANT state ... 23
READY state ... 23
RUNNING state ... 23
SUSPENDED state ... 23
WAITING state ... 23
WAITING-SUSPENDED state ... 23
task state packet ... 129
ter_tsk ... 145
tget_mpf ... 195
time management function ... 73, 200
ref_cyc ... 204
sta_cyc ... 201
stp_cyc ... 203
timeout ... 74
timer handler ... 73
trcv_mbx ... 188
tslp_tsk ... 151
twai_flg ... 179
twai_sem ... 168

U

unl_cpu ... 211
user-own coding module ... 13
boot processing ... 13
idle routine ... 13
initialization routine ... 13
interrupt entry processing ... 13

V

version information packet ... 137

W

wai_flg ... 175
wai_sem ... 166
WAITING state ... 23
WAITING-SUSPENDED state ... 23
WAITING type ... 127
wup_tsk ... 153

Revision Record

Rev.	Date	Description	
		Page	Summary
1.00	Apr 01, 2011	-	First Edition issued
1.01	Apr 01, 2012	14	Table 2-1 RI78V4 Segments Changed as follows: the information contained in "Segment Attribute" column of "k_system" line and "k_info" line. CSEG UINTP -->CSEG UNITP
		14	Table 2-1 RI78V4 Segments Changed as follows: the information contained in "Description" column of "k_system" line and "k_info" line. ... from 0x000c0 to 0x0ffff. -->... from 0x000c0 to 0xeffff.
		127	Table 12-4 WAITING Types Changed as follows: the information contained in "Description" column. Sleeping state. Delayed state. Waiting state for a semaphore resource. Waiting state for an eventflag. Receiving waiting state for a mailbox. Waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block. --> A task enters this state if the counter for the task (registering the number of times the wakeup request has been issued) indicates 0x0 upon the issuance of a slp_tsk or tslp_tsk. A task enters this state upon the issuance of a dly_tsk. A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a resource from the relevant semaphore upon the issuance of a wai_sem or twai_sem. A task enters this state if a relevant eventflag does not satisfy a predetermined condition upon the issuance of a wai_flg or twai_flg. A task enters this state if cannot receive a message from the relevant mailbox upon the issuance of a rcv_mbx or trcv_mbx. A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a fixed-sized memory block from the relevant fixed-sized memory pool upon the issuance of a get_mpf or tget_mpf.
		130	12.5.1 Task state packet Changed as follows: the sentence in the item "tskwait, rtsk_wait". Sleeping state. Delayed state. Waiting state for a semaphore resource. Waiting state for an eventflag.

Rev.	Date	Description	
		Page	Summary
1.01	Apr 01, 2012		Receiving waiting state for a mailbox. Waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block. -->A task enters this state if the counter for the task (registering the number of times the wakeup request has been issued) indicates 0x0 upon the issuance of a slp_tsk or tslp_tsk. A task enters this state upon the issuance of a dly_tsk. A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a resource from the relevant semaphore upon the issuance of a wai_sem or twai_sem. A task enters this state if a relevant eventflag does not satisfy a predetermined condition upon the issuance of a wai_flg or twai_flg. A task enters this state if cannot receive a message from the relevant mailbox upon the issuance of a rcv_mbx or trcv_mbx. A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a fixed-sized memory block from the relevant fixed-sized memory pool upon the issuance of a get_mpf or tget_mpf.
		209	loc_cpu/iloc_cpu Changed as follows: the sentence in the "Explanation". If a maskable interrupt is created during this period, ... -->If a maskable interrupt is created during the interval from this service call is issued until unl_cpu or iunl_cpu is issued, ...
		221	13.2.1 Cautions Changed as follows: the sentence in this section. Figure 13-1 illustrates how the system configuration file is described. -->The following describes a system configuration file description format.
		227	13.4.2 Semaphore information Changed as follows: the sentence in the item "2)" - "[Queuing method]" - "TA_TFIFO". Task wait queue is in FIFO order. -->If a resource could not be acquired (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when wai_sem or twai_sem is issued, the task is queued to the semaphore wait queue in the order of resource acquisition request.
		228	13.4.3 Eventflag information Changed as follows: the sentence in the item "2)" - "[Queuing method]" - "TA_TFIFO". Task wait queue is in FIFO order. -->If the bit pattern of the eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when wai_flg or twai_flg is issued, the task is

Rev.	Date	Description	
		Page	Summary
1.01	Apr 01, 2012		queued to the eventflag wait queue.
		229	13.4.4 Mailbox information Change as follows: the sentence in the item "2)" - "[Task queuing]" - "TA_TFIFO". Task wait queue is in FIFO order. -->If the message could not be received from the mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when rcv_mbx or trcv_mbx is issued, the task is queued to the mailbox wait queue in the order of message reception request.
		229	13.4.4 Mailbox information Changed as follows: the sentence in the item "2)" - "[Message queuing method]" - "TA_MFIFO". Message queue is in FIFO order. -->If a task is not queued to the mailbox wait queue when snd_mbx is issued, the message is queued to the mailbox wait queue in the order of message transmission request.
		229	13.4.4 Mailbox information Changed as follows: the sentence in the item "2)" - "[Message queuing method]" - "TA_MPRI". Message queue is in message priority order. -->If a task is not queued to the mailbox wait queue when snd_mbx is issued, the message is queued to the mailbox wait queue in the order of message priority.
		230	13.4.5 Fixed-sized memory pool information Changed as follows: the sentence in the item "2)" - "[Queuing method]" - "TA_TFIFO". Task wait queue is in FIFO order. -->If a memory block could not be acquired (no available memory blocks exist) when get_mpf or tget_mpf is issued, the task is queued to the fixed-sized memory pool wait queue in the order of memory block acquisition request.

RI78V4 User's Manual:
Coding

Publication Date: Rev.1.00 Apr 01, 2011
Rev.1.01 Apr 01, 2012

Published by: Renesas Electronics Corporation

SALES OFFICES Renesas Electronics Corporation http://www.renesas.com

Refer to "http://www.renesas.com/" for the latest and detailed information.

Renesas Electronics America Inc.
2880 Scott Boulevard Santa Clara, CA 95050-2554, U.S.A.
Tel: +1-408-588-6000, Fax: +1-408-588-6130

Renesas Electronics Canada Limited
1101 Nicholson Road, Newmarket, Ontario L3Y 9C3, Canada
Tel: +1-905-898-5441, Fax: +1-905-898-3220

Renesas Electronics Europe Limited
Dukes Meadow, Millboard Road, Bourne End, Buckinghamshire, SL8 5FH, U.K
Tel: +44-1628-585-100, Fax: +44-1628-585-900

Renesas Electronics Europe GmbH
Arcadiastrasse 10, 40472 Düsseldorf, Germany
Tel: +49-211-65030, Fax: +49-211-6503-1327

Renesas Electronics (China) Co., Ltd.
7th Floor, Quantum Plaza, No.27 ZhiChunLu Haidian District, Beijing 100083, P.R.China
Tel: +86-10-8235-1155, Fax: +86-10-8235-7679

Renesas Electronics (Shanghai) Co., Ltd.
Unit 204, 205, AZIA Center, No.1233 Lujiazui Ring Rd., Pudong District, Shanghai 200120, China
Tel: +86-21-5877-1818, Fax: +86-21-6887-7858 / -7898

Renesas Electronics Hong Kong Limited
Unit 1601-1613, 16/F., Tower 2, Grand Century Place, 193 Prince Edward Road West, Mongkok, Kowloon, Hong Kong
Tel: +852-2886-9318, Fax: +852 2886-9022/9044

Renesas Electronics Taiwan Co., Ltd.
13F, No. 363, Fu Shing North Road, Taipei, Taiwan
Tel: +886-2-8175-9600, Fax: +886 2-8175-9670

Renesas Electronics Singapore Pte. Ltd.
1 harbourFront Avenue, #06-10, keppel Bay Tower, Singapore 098632
Tel: +65-6213-0200, Fax: +65-6278-8001

Renesas Electronics Malaysia Sdn.Bhd.
Unit 906, Block B, Menara Amcorp, Amcorp Trade Centre, No. 18, Jln Persiaran Barat, 46050 Petaling Jaya, Selangor Darul Ehsan, Malaysia
Tel: +60-3-7955-9390, Fax: +60-3-7955-9510

Renesas Electronics Korea Co., Ltd.
11F., Samik Lavied' or Bldg., 720-2 Yeoksam-Dong, Kangnam-Ku, Seoul 135-080, Korea
Tel: +82-2-558-3737, Fax: +82-2-558-5141

© 2012 Renesas Electronics Corporation. All rights reserved.

Colophon 1.1

RI78V4

Renesas Electronics Corporation

R20UT0511EJ0101